

SERIES ON GENERAL KNOWLEDGE

**WORLD  
FAMOUS  
PERSONALITIES  
IN HISTORY**

**P.N. FASMA And SMSI**

# Series On General Knowledge



**PUSTAKA CITA TINGGI**  
No 32, Jalan PBS 14/8,  
Tmn Perindustrian Bkt Serdang,  
43300 Seri Kembangan,  
Selangor Darul Ehsan.  
Tel: 03-8945 8505  
Fax: 03-8945 8510

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher.

© PUSTAKA CITA TINGGI  
First Published 2004

ISBN SIRI 983-023-423-1  
ISBN 983-023-427-4

M  
928  
WOM

*World Famous  
Personalities In History*

M  
1145640

01-SEP 2004  
Perpustakaan Negara  
Malaysia



GEORGE WASHINGTON IN HISTORY

# CONTENTS

1. <i>George Washington In History</i> .....	1
2. <i>Abraham Lincoln In History</i> .....	30
3. <i>Nepoleon Bonaparte In History</i> .....	32
4. <i>Joan Of Arc In History</i> .....	78
5. <i>Dalai Lama In History</i> .....	82
6. <i>Nelson Mandela In History</i> .....	89
7. <i>Siddhartha Gautama In History</i> .....	93
8. <i>Saddam Hussein In History</i> .....	118
9. <i>Osama Bin Laden In History</i> .....	127





## GEORGE WASHINGTON IN HISTORY

GEORGE WASHINGTON was commander in chief of the Continental army during the American Revolution and first president of the United States (1789-97). On April 30, 1789, George Washington, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall on Wall Street in New York, took his oath of office as the first President of the United States. 'As the first of every thing, in our situation will serve to establish a Precedent,' he wrote James Madison, 'it is devoutly wished on my part, that these precedents may be fixed on true principles.'

Born in 1732 into a Virginia planter family, he learned the morals, manners, and body of knowledge requisite for an 18th century Virginia gentleman. He pursued two intertwined interests: military arts and western expansion. At 16, he helped survey Shenandoah lands for Thomas, Lord Fairfax. Commissioned as a lieutenant colonel in 1754, he fought the first skirmishes of what grew into the French and Indian War. The next year, as an aide to Gen. Edward Braddock, he escaped injury although four bullets ripped his coat and two horses were shot from under him.

From 1759 to the outbreak of the American Revolution, Washington managed his lands around Mount Vernon and served in the Virginia House of Burgesses. Married to a widow, Martha Dandridge Custis, he devoted himself to a busy but happy life. But like his fellow planters, Washington felt himself exploited by British merchants and hampered by British regulations. As the quarrel with the mother country grew acute, he moderately but firmly voiced his resistance to the restrictions.

When the Second Continental Congress assembled in Philadelphia in May 1775, Washington, one of the Virginia delegates, was elected Commander in Chief of the Continental Army. On July 3, 1775, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, he took command of his ill-trained troops and embarked upon a war that was to last six grueling years.

He realized early that the best strategy was to harass the British. He reported to Congress, 'we should on all Occasions avoid a general Action, or put anything to the Risque, unless compelled by a necessity, into which we ought never to be drawn.' Ensuing battles saw him fall back slowly, then strike unexpectedly. Finally in 1781 with the aid of French allies -he forced the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown.

Washington longed to retire to his fields at Mount Vernon. But he soon realized that the Nation under its Articles of Confederation was not functioning well, so he became a prime mover in the steps leading to the Constitutional Convention at

Philadelphia in 1787. When the new Constitution was ratified, the Electoral College unanimously elected Washington President

He did not infringe upon the policy making powers that he felt the Constitution gave Congress. But the determination of foreign policy became preponderantly a Presidential concern. When the French Revolution led to a major war between France and England, Washington refused to accept entirely the recommendations of either his Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson, who was pro-French, or his Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton, who was pro-British. Rather, he insisted upon a neutral course until the United States could grow stronger.

To his disappointment, two parties were developing by the end of his first term. Wearing of politics, feeling old, he retired at the end of his second. In his Farewell Address, he urged his countrymen to forswear excessive party spirit and geographical distinctions. In foreign affairs, he warned against long-term alliances.

Washington enjoyed less than three years of retirement at Mount Vernon, for he died of a throat infection December 14, 1799. For months the Nation mourned him.

### **Early Life And Career**

Born in Westmoreland County, Va., on Feb. 22, 1732, George Washington was the eldest son of Augustine Washington and his second wife, Mary Ball Washington, who were prosperous Virginia gentry of English descent. George spent his early years on the family estate on Pope's Creek along the Potomac River. His early education included the study of such subjects as mathematics, surveying, the classics, and 'rules of civility.' His father died in 1743, and soon thereafter George went to live with his half brother Lawrence at Mount Vernon, Lawrence's plantation on the Potomac. Lawrence, who became something of a substitute father for his brother, had married into the Fairfax family, prominent and influential Virginians who helped launch George's career.

An early ambition to go to sea had been effectively discouraged by George's mother; instead, he turned to surveying, securing (1748) an appointment to survey Lord Fairfax's lands in the Shenandoah Valley. He helped lay out the Virginia town of Belhaven (now Alexandria) in 1749 and was appointed surveyor for Culpeper County. George accompanied his brother to Barbados in an effort to cure Lawrence of tuberculosis, but Lawrence died in 1752, soon after the brothers returned. George ultimately inherited the Mount Vernon estate.

By 1753 the growing rivalry between the British and French over control of the Ohio Valley, soon to erupt into the French and Indian War (1754-63), created new opportunities for the ambitious young Washington. He first gained public notice when, as adjutant of one of Virginia's four military districts, he was dispatched (October 1753) by Gov. Robert Dinwiddie on a fruitless mission to warn the French commander at Fort Le Boeuf against further encroachment on territory claimed by Britain.



Washington's diary account of the dangers and difficulties of his journey, published at Williamsburg on his return, may have helped win him his ensuing promotion to lieutenant colonel. Although only 22 years of age and lacking experience, he learned quickly, meeting the problems of recruitment, supply, and desertions with a combination of brashness and native ability that earned him the respect of his superiors.

### **French And Indian War**

In April 1754, on his way to establish a post at the Forks of the Ohio (the current site of Pittsburgh), Washington learned that the French had already erected a fort there. Warned that the French were advancing, he quickly threw up fortifications at Great Meadows, Pa., aptly naming the entrenchment Fort Necessity, and marched to intercept advancing French troops.

In the resulting skirmish the French commander the sieur de Jumonville was killed and most of his men were captured. Washington pulled his small force back into Fort Necessity where he was overwhelmed (July 3) by the French in an all-day battle fought in a drenching rain. Surrounded by enemy troops, with his food supply almost exhausted and his dampened ammunition useless, Washington capitulated. Under the terms of the surrender signed that day, he was permitted to march his troops back to Williamsburg.

Discouraged by his defeat and angered by discrimination between British and colonial officers in rank and pay, he resigned his commission near the end of 1754. The next year, however, he volunteered to join British general Edward Braddock's expedition against the French. When Braddock was ambushed by the French and their Indian allies on the Monongahela River, Washington, although seriously ill, tried to rally the Virginia troops. Whatever public criticism attended the debacle, Washington's own military reputation was enhanced, and in 1755, at the age of 23, he was promoted to colonel and appointed commander in chief of the Virginia militia, with responsibility for defending the frontier.

In 1758 he took an active part in Gen. John Forbes's successful campaign against Fort Duquesne. From his correspondence during these years, Washington can be seen evolving from a brash, vain, and opinionated young officer, impatient with restraints and given to writing admonitory letters to his superiors, to a mature soldier with a grasp of administration and a firm understanding of how to deal effectively with civil authority.

### **Virginia Politician**

Assured that the Virginia frontier was safe from French attack, Washington left the army in 1758 and returned to Mount Vernon, directing his attention toward restoring his neglected estate. He erected new buildings, refurbished the house, and experimented with new crops. With the support of an ever-growing circle of influential

friends, he entered politics, serving (1759-74) in Virginia's House of Burgesses.

In January 1759 he married Martha Dandridge Custis, a wealthy and attractive young widow with two small children. It was to be a happy and satisfying marriage. After 1769, Washington became a leader in Virginia's opposition to Great Britain's colonial policies. At first he hoped for reconciliation with Britain, although some British policies had touched him personally.

Discrimination against colonial military officers had rankled deeply, and British land policies and restrictions on western expansion after 1763 had seriously hindered his plans for western land speculation. In addition, he shared the usual planter's dilemma in being continually in debt to his London agents. As a delegate (1774-75) to the First and Second Continental Congress, Washington did not participate actively in the deliberations, but his presence was undoubtedly a stabilizing influence. In June 1775 he was Congress's unanimous choice as commander in chief of the Continental forces.

### **American Revolution**

Washington took command of the troops surrounding British-occupied Boston on July 3, devoting the next few months to training the undisciplined 14,000-man army and trying to secure urgently needed powder and other supplies. Early in March 1776, using cannon brought down from Ticonderoga by Henry Knox, Washington occupied Dorchester Heights, effectively commanding the city and forcing the British to evacuate on March 17.

He then moved to defend New York City against the combined land and sea forces of Sir William Howe. In New York he committed a military blunder by occupying an untenable position in Brooklyn, although he saved his army by skillfully retreating from Manhattan into Westchester County and through New Jersey into Pennsylvania. In the last months of 1776, desperately short of men and supplies, Washington almost despaired. He had lost New York City to the British; enlistment was almost up for a number of the troops, and others were deserting in droves; civilian morale was falling rapidly; and Congress, faced with the possibility of a British attack on Philadelphia, had withdrawn from the city.

Colonial morale was briefly revived by the capture of Trenton, N.J., a brilliantly conceived attack in which Washington crossed the Delaware River on Christmas night 1776 and surprised the predominantly Hessian garrison. Advancing to Princeton, N.J., he routed the British there on Jan. 3, 1777, but in September and October 1777 he suffered serious reverses in Pennsylvania -at Brandywine and Germantown. The major success of that year -the defeat (October 1777) of the British at Saratoga, N.Y. -had belonged not to Washington but to Benedict Arnold and Horatio Gates. The contrast between Washington's record and Gates's brilliant victory was one factor that led to the so-called Conway Cabal -an intrigue by some members of Congress and army officers to replace Washington with a more suc-



successful commander, probably Gates.

Washington acted quickly, and the plan eventually collapsed due to lack of public support as well as to Washington's overall superiority to his rivals. After holding his bedraggled and dispirited army together during the difficult winter at Valley Forge, Washington learned that France had recognized American independence. With the aid of the Prussian Baron von Steuben and the French marquis de LaFayette, he concentrated on turning the army into a viable fighting force, and by spring he was ready to take the field again. In June 1778 he attacked the British near Monmouth Courthouse, N.J., on their withdrawal from Philadelphia to New York.

Although American general Charles Lee's lack of enterprise ruined Washington's plan to strike a major blow at Sir Henry Clinton's army at Monmouth, the commander in chief's quick action on the field prevented an American defeat. In 1780 the main theater of the war shifted to the south. Although the campaigns in Virginia and the Carolinas were conducted by other generals, including Nathanael Greene and Daniel Morgan, Washington was still responsible for the overall direction of the war. After the arrival of the French army in 1780 he concentrated on coordinating allied efforts and in 1781 launched, in cooperation with the comte de Rochambeau and the comte d'Estaing, the brilliantly planned and executed Yorktown Campaign against Charles Cornwallis, securing (Oct. 19, 1781) the American victory.

Washington had grown enormously in stature during the war. A man of unquestioned integrity, he began by accepting the advice of more experienced officers such as Gates and Charles Lee, but he quickly learned to trust his own judgment. He sometimes railed at Congress for its failure to supply troops and for the bungling fiscal measures that frustrated his efforts to secure adequate materiel. Gradually, however, he developed what was perhaps his greatest strength in a society suspicious of the military - his ability to deal effectively with civil authority.

Whatever his private opinions, his relations with Congress and with the state governments were exemplary - despite the fact that his wartime powers sometimes amounted to dictatorial authority. On the battlefield Washington relied on a policy of trial and error, eventually becoming a master of improvisation. Often accused of being overly cautious, he could be bold when success seemed possible. He learned to use the short-term militia skillfully and to combine green troops with veterans to produce an efficient fighting force.

After the war Washington returned to Mount Vernon, which had declined in his absence. Although he became president of the Society of the Cincinnati, an organization of former Revolutionary War officers, he avoided involvement in Virginia politics. Preferring to concentrate on restoring Mount Vernon, he added a greenhouse, a mill, an icehouse, and new land to the estate. He experimented with crop rotation, bred hunting dogs and horses, investigated the development of Potomac River navigation, undertook various commercial ventures, and traveled

(1784) west to examine his land holdings near the Ohio River. His diary notes a steady stream of visitors, native and foreign; Mount Vernon, like its owner, had already become a national institution.

In May 1787, Washington headed the Virginia delegation to the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia and was unanimously elected presiding officer. His presence lent prestige to the proceedings, and although he made few direct contributions, he generally supported the advocates of a strong central government. After the new Constitution was submitted to the states for ratification and became legally operative, he was unanimously elected president (1789).

### **The Presidency**

Taking office (Apr. 30, 1789) in New York City, Washington acted carefully and deliberately, aware of the need to build an executive structure that could accommodate future presidents. Hoping to prevent sectionalism from dividing the new nation, he toured the New England states (1789) and the South (1791). An able administrator, he nevertheless failed to heal the widening breach between factions led by Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson and Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton. Because he supported many of Hamilton's controversial fiscal policies - the assumption of state debts, the Bank of the United States, and the excise tax - Washington became the target of attacks by Jeffersonian Democratic-Republicans.

Washington was reelected president in 1792, and the following year the most divisive crisis arising out of the personal and political conflicts within his cabinet occurred - over the issue of American neutrality during the war between England and France. Washington, whose policy of neutrality angered the pro-French Jeffersonians, was horrified by the excesses of the French Revolution and enraged by the tactics of Edmond Genet, the French minister in the United States, which amounted to foreign interference in American politics. Furthermore, with an eye toward developing closer commercial ties with the British, the president agreed with the Hamiltonians on the need for peace with Great Britain.

His acceptance of the 1794 Jay's Treaty, which settled outstanding differences between the United States and Britain but which Democratic-Republicans viewed as an abject surrender to British demands, revived vituperation against the president, as did his vigorous upholding of the excise law during the WHISKEY REBELLION in western Pennsylvania.

### **Retirement And Assessment**

By March 1797, when Washington left office, the country's financial system was well established; the Indian threat east of the Mississippi had been largely eliminated; and Jay's Treaty and Pinckney's Treaty (1795) with Spain had enlarged U.S. territory and removed serious diplomatic difficulties. In spite of the animosities and conflicting opinions between Democratic-Republicans and members of the Hamiltonian

Federalist party, the two groups were at least united in acceptance of the new federal government. Washington refused to run for a third term and, after a masterly Farewell Address in which he warned the United States against permanent alliances abroad, he went home to Mount Vernon. He was succeeded by his vice-president, Federalist John Adams. Although Washington reluctantly accepted command of the army in 1798 when war with France seemed imminent, he did not assume an active role. He preferred to spend his last years in happy retirement at Mount Vernon. In mid-December, Washington contracted what was probably quinsy or acute laryngitis; he declined rapidly and died at his estate on Dec. 14, 1799.

### **Washington's 'Earnest Prayer'**

The Prayer below was written by Washington at Newburgh, New York, at the close of the Revolutionary War on June 14, 1783. It was sent to the thirteen governors of the newly freed states in a 'Circular Letter Addressed to the Governors of all the States on the Disbanding of the Army.'

Circular Letter Addressed to the Governors of all the States on the Disbanding of the Army: 'I have thus freely declared what I wished to make known, before I surrendered up my public trust to those who committed it to me. The task is now accomplished. I now bid adieu to your Excellency, as the chief magistrate of your State, at the same time I bid a last farewell to the cares of office and all the employments of public life.

It remains, then, to be my final and only request that your Excellency will communicate these sentiments to your legislature at their next meeting, and that they may be considered the legacy of one, who has ardently wished, on all occasions, to be useful to his country, and who, even in the shade of retirement, will not fail to implore the divine benediction on it.

I now make it my earnest prayer that God would have you, and the State over which you preside, in his holy protection; that he would incline the hearts of the citizens to cultivate a spirit of subordination and obedience to government, to entertain a brotherly affection and love for one another, for their fellow-citizens of the United States at large, and particularly for brethren who have served in the field; and finally that he would most graciously be pleased to dispose us all to do justice, to love mercy, and to demean ourselves with that charity, humility, and pacific temper of mind, which were the characteristics of the Divine Author of our blessed religion, and without an humble imitation of whose example in these things, we can never hope to be a happy nation.'

At his first inauguration, George Washington took the oath of office for the presidency on April 30, 1789. He was standing on the balcony of Federal Hall in New York City with his hand on an open Bible. After he finished taking the oath, the audience in attendance gave a thunderous ovation and bells of the various churches began ringing in his honor. After his oath of office was completed, he went to deliv-

er his inaugural address to Congress.

'Such being the impressions under which I have, in obedience to the public summons, repaired to the present station, it would be peculiarly improper to omit, in this first official act, my fervent supplications to that Almighty Being who rules over the universe, who presides in the councils of nations and whose providential aid can supply every human defect, that His benediction may consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States a Government instituted by themselves for these essential purposes; and may enable every instrument employed in its administration to execute with success, the functions allotted to his charge.

In tendering this homage to the Great Author of every public and private good, I assure myself that it expresses your sentiments not less than my own; nor those of my fellow-citizens at large, less than either. No people can be bound to acknowledge and adore the Invisible Hand which conducts the affairs of men more than the people of the United States.

Every step by which they have advanced to the character of an independent nation seems to have been distinguished by some token of providential agency; and in the important revolution just accomplished in the system of their United government, the tranquil deliberations and voluntary consent of so many distinct communities, from which the event has resulted can not be compared with the means by which most governments have been established, without some return of pious gratitude, along with an humble anticipation of the future blessings which them past seem to presage.

These reflections, arising out of the present crisis, have forced themselves too strongly on my mind to be suppressed. You will join with me I trust in thinking, that there are none under the influence of which the proceedings of a new and free Government can more auspiciously commence.

We ought to be no less persuaded that the propitious smiles of Heaven can never be expected on a nation that disregards the eternal rules of order and right which Heaven itself has ordained; and since the preservation of sacred fire of liberty and the destiny of the republican model of government are justly considered as deeply, perhaps finally, staked of the experiment...

I shall take my present leave; but not without resorting once more to the Benign Parent of the Human Race, in humble supplication that, since He has been pleased to favor the American people with opportunities for deliberating in perfect tranquility, and dispositions for deciding with unparalleled unanimity on a form of government for the security of their union and the advancement of their happiness, so His divine blessings may be equally conspicuous in the enlarged views, the temperate consultations and the wise measures on which the success of this Government must depend.'

In the National Tribune, 1880, an article appeared giving an account of the 'Vision of Washington' at Valley Forge. The account was told by a gentleman named Anthony Sherman, who supposedly was at Valley Forge during the winter of 1777-78. The story has been published several times.

Some people will say that it is substantiated by the fact that a copy of the account is in the Library of Congress. This argument of authenticity is misleading in and of itself. The Library of Congress has copies of anything published. That does not indicate accuracy of the content.

I am unaware of any eighteenth-century evidence that corroborates this story. The soldier mentioned as having a first-hand account of the 'Vision,' Anthony Sherman, was a soldier in the Continental Army. However, according to his pension application, written by him, he states that he was at Saratoga under the command of Benedict Arnold at the end of 1777 and only joined the main forces in 1778 in New Jersey just before the Battle of Monmouth.

### **Anthony Sherman wrote:**

You doubtless heard the story of Washington's going to the thicket to pray in secret for aid and comfort from God, the interposition of whose Divine Providence brought us safely through the darkest days of tribulation. One day, I remember it well, when the chilly winds whistled through the leafless trees, though the sky was cloudless and the sun shown brightly, he remained in his quarters nearly all the afternoon alone. When he came out, I noticed that his face was a shade paler than usual. There seemed to be something on his mind of more than ordinary importance. Returning just after dusk, he dispatched an orderly to the quarters who was presently in attendance. After a preliminary conversation of about an hour, Washington, gazing upon his companion with that strange look of dignity which he alone commanded, related the event that occurred that day. 'George Washington's Vision'.

This afternoon, as I was sitting at this table engaged in preparing a dispatch, something seemed to disturb me. Looking up, I beheld standing opposite me a singularly beautiful female. So astonished was I, for I had given strict orders not to be disturbed, that it was some moments before I found language to inquire the cause of her presence. A second, a third and even a fourth time did I repeat my question, but received no answer from my mysterious visitor except a slight raising of her eyes.

By this time I felt strange sensations spreading through me. I would have risen but the riveted gaze of the being before me rendered volition impossible. I assayed once more to address her, but my tongue had become useless, as though it had become paralyzed.

A new influence, mysterious, potent, irresistible, took possession of me. All I could do was to gaze steadily, vacantly at my unknown visitor. Gradually the surrounding atmosphere seemed as if it had become filled with sensations, and luminous. Everything about me seemed to rarefy, the mysterious visitor herself becom-

ing more airy and yet more distinct to my sight than before. I now began to feel as one dying, or rather to experience the sensations which I have sometimes imagined accompany dissolution. I did not think, I did not reason, I did not move; all were alike impossible. I was only conscious of gazing fixedly, vacantly at my companion.

Presently I heard a voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn,' while at the same time my visitor extended her arm eastwardly, I now beheld a heavy white vapor at some distance rising fold upon fold. This gradually dissipated, and I looked upon a stranger scene. Before me lay spread out in one vast plain all the countries of the world - Europe, Asia, Africa and America. I saw rolling and tossing between Europe and America the billows of the Atlantic, and between Asia and America lay the Pacific.

'Son of the Republic,' said the same mysterious voice as before, 'look and learn.' At that moment I beheld a dark, shadowy being, like an angel, standing or rather floating in mid-air, between Europe and America. Dipping water out of the ocean in the hollow of each hand, he sprinkled some upon America with his right hand, while with his left hand he cast some on Europe. Immediately a cloud raised from these countries, and joined in mid-ocean. For a while it remained stationary, and then moved slowly westward, until it enveloped America in its murky folds. Sharp flashes of lightning gleamed through it at intervals, and I heard the smothered groans and cries of the American people.

A second time the angel dipped water from the ocean, and sprinkled it out as before. The dark cloud was then drawn back to the ocean, in whose heaving billows it sank from view. A third time I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn,' I cast my eyes upon America and beheld villages and towns and cities springing up one after another until the whole land from the Atlantic to the Pacific was dotted with them.

Again, I heard the mysterious voice say, 'Son of the Republic, the end of the century cometh, look and learn.' At this the dark shadowy angel turned his face southward, and from Africa I saw an ill omened specter approach our land. It flitted slowly over every town and city of the latter. The inhabitants presently set themselves in battle array against each other. As I continued looking I saw a bright angel, on whose brow rested a crown of light, on which was traced the word 'Union,' bearing the American flag which he placed between the divided nation, and said, 'Remember ye are brethren.' Instantly, the inhabitants, casting from them their weapons became friends once more, and united around the National Standard.

'And again I heard the mysterious voice saying 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' At this the dark, shadowy angel placed a trumpet to his mouth, and blew three distinct blasts; and taking water from the ocean, he sprinkled it upon Europe, Asia and Africa. Then my eyes beheld a fearful scene: From each of these countries arose thick, black clouds that were soon joined into one. Throughout this mass there gleamed a dark red light by which I saw hordes of armed men, who, moving with

the cloud, marched by land and sailed by sea to America. Our country was enveloped in this volume of cloud, and I saw these vast armies devastate the whole country and burn the villages, towns and cities that I beheld springing up. As my ears listened to the thundering of the cannon, clashing of sword, and the shouts and cries of millions in mortal combat, I heard again the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn' When the voice had ceased, the dark shadowy angel placed his trumpet once more to his mouth, and blew a long and fearful blast.

'Instantly a light as of a thousand suns shone down from above me, and pierced and broke into fragments the dark cloud which enveloped America. At the same moment the angel upon whose head still shone the word Union, and who bore our national flag in one hand and a sword in the other, descended from the heavens attended by legions of white spirits. These immediately joined the inhabitants of America, who I perceived were will nigh overcome, but who immediately taking courage again, closed up their broken ranks and renewed the battle.'

Again, amid the fearful noise of the conflict, I heard the mysterious voice saying, 'Son of the Republic, look and learn.' As the voice ceased, the shadowy angel for the last time dipped water from the ocean and sprinkled it upon America. Instantly the dark cloud rolled back, together with the armies it had brought, leaving the inhabitants of the land victorious!

Then once more I beheld the villages, towns and cities springing up where I had seen them before, while the bright angel, planting the azure standard he had brought in the midst of them, cried with a loud voice: 'While the stars remain, and the heavens send down dew upon the earth, so long shall the Union last.' And taking from his brow the crown on which blazoned the word 'Union,' he placed it upon the Standard while the people, kneeling down, said, 'Amen.'

The scene instantly began to fade and dissolve, and I at last saw nothing but the rising, curling vapor I at first beheld. This also disappearing, I found myself once more gazing upon the mysterious visitor, who, in the same voice I had heard before, said, 'Son of the Republic, what you have seen is thus interpreted: Three great perils will come upon the Republic. The most fearful is the third, but in this greatest conflict the whole world united shall not prevail against her.

Let every child of the Republic learn to live for his God, his land and the Union.' With these words the vision vanished, and I started from my seat and felt that I had seen a vision wherein had been shown to me the birth, progress, and destiny of the United States.

### **George Washington:**

#### *The Soldier Through the French and Indian War*

George Washington's military career presents the most outstanding illustration of a characteristic peculiarly his own, that he did not mark time in any of the important

positions of his life. His passion for education caused him to concentrate on hard study, to acquire the necessary knowledge to excel, whether it was surveying, farming, building forts, shipping produce, or leading armies.

One of the many legends woven around the life of George Washington claims that his father discovered the child's military bent when he was quite a small boy and gave him a toy sword which delighted him greatly. While there is no more documentary evidence to prove the truth of this story than there is of the original cherry tree tale and the highly-colored romances attributed to his young manhood, it is definitely shown that he inherited the military tendency of the Washingtons and that this received decided impetus by the military atmosphere created through the activities prevailing in the colony of Virginia in the raising of the troops to be sent to the West Indies to combat the Spaniards.

Lawrence Washington, the elder of George's two stepbrothers, 14 years his senior, had offered his services and had been commissioned captain in the contingent that sailed in 1740 to join the combined expeditions of Admiral Vernon and General Wentworth. Little 8-year-old George may well have experienced all of a small boy's thrilling excitement and admiration over watching the drilling and preparations for departure of Lawrence and his comrades for the scene of war.

The love of military affairs did not abate and pass as most boyish enthusiasms do, but developed into a fixed interest which was strengthened when the loved elder brother returned two years later and continued his own military associations by becoming adjutant of his district in Virginia with the rank of major.

Having inherited the plantation on the Potomac which he renamed Mount Vernon and taken himself Miss Anne Fairfax to wife, Lawrence Washington drew about him an exclusive circle of the best people of the colony, and retained his interest in both military and naval matters. Association with these men of society and affairs was of the greatest benefit and advantage to young George during the impressionable period of his life and enhanced and encouraged what was probably a natural military predilection.

The determination of both France and England to secure and hold the supremacy of the Mississippi Valley, and the growing indications of an impending contest between them, brought about a revival of the military spirit in the colony of Virginia, and through it came active preparations for any part she might be called upon to take in consequence. This matter vitally interested Lawrence Washington, who was associated with the Ohio Company recently organized to develop the region over the mountains, and while there is a lack of record on the fact, it seems evident that, with the aid of former army companions, such as Van Braam and George Muse, he had his young brother not only instructed in fencing but also in the elements of military science. From the beginning of George Washington's writings upon his military experience there are evidences of great natural ability and also of training. Hence, when in 1752 Governor Dinwiddie appointed him a district adjutant



of the militia, with the rank of major, there was probably in it a recognition that, in spite of youth, Washington possessed the requirements for the task.

To his military training he undoubtedly gave the same concentrated study that distinguished his school life and the study of surveying. He seemed to have been possessed of a passion to acquire all available knowledge on matters of paramount interest to him. His exercise books before he was 16, which have been preserved, show an unusual grasp of mathematics.

Regarding his knowledge of this science as manifested in these books, Charles Moore wrote: 'The one devoted to Mathematics exhibits a wide range of subjects combined with sureness and accuracy in working and clearness and neatness of presentation. Few graduates of colleges today, unless they specialize in mathematics, become as well trained in that subject.'

When it became necessary to take some action in regard to what was considered French encroachments upon English territory on the Ohio, Governor Dinwiddie followed the example of Lord Fairfax and selected Major Washington for the job. This was the second instance of the effect of George Washington's personality upon older people. The impression of efficiency, dependability, and high courage, which from boyhood had radiated from him, made an extraordinary impression upon those with whom he came in contact.

This quality never left him, and it has never been disputed. It carried with it an unspoken assurance that he was fitted by some remarkable combination of talents for tasks he was willing to undertake, and that he would carry them through to successful completion if that were possible. While in others of his extreme youth the years may have implied limitations in the expectations focused upon his endeavors, this never seemed to be considered in respect to the tasks put upon his shoulders.

This quality was first recognized by Lord Fairfax, who marked by his confidence and comradeship the fitting of a man's tasks to the square young shoulders of a boy without cutting those tasks to a boy's measure. Just as George Washington stepped into a man-sized job as a surveyor, so when he accepted Governor Dinwiddie's mission to the Ohio he stepped not only into a man-sized task but into a path which led, as we now are able to trace it, directly to the American independence, of which he was the chosen instrument.

His training, whether theoretical in military elements or practical in surveying and frontier life, had fitted him for the duty. Through his knowledge of the rugged, hazardous life of the scattered, isolated pioneers beyond the settlements and the extreme hardships and emergencies of dangers to be met and combated in transportation, afoot, on horseback, or by canoe, he was not only grounded in self-reliance and resourcefulness, but what was a marvelous advantage for the man destined to lead a nation through eight years of war to victory was that he was wholly fearless. Never was George Washington known to feel or exhibit any fear in any situation. He is credited with saying that fear was absent from his make-up, and he

could not tolerate cowardice in others.

By 1753 the situation on the Ohio region had become so serious through the French occupation, and their efforts to attach the Indians to them against the English, that Governor Dinwiddie, under orders from England, prepared a letter for the French commander which he intrusted to Major Washington for delivery, as it was a mission of greatest difficulty and danger, and of utmost importance not only that the letter be gotten to the French commandant but that a full report of the situation, the location of the forts, etc., be brought back. One messenger had already returned, beaten and baffled by the dangers, before making any real headway, and the colonial governor pinned all of his faith to the young officer whose fearlessness, masterfulness, and good judgement had already made for him a place of distinction among his fellows.

Major Washington began his journey on October 3, 1753; and though beset with the greatest difficulties, extreme hardships, and actual endangerment of life, he completed this mission January 16, 1754, when he brought to Governor Dinwiddie the important reply and his own report with a map. This report which, although hastily written in a few hours from his daily journal, demonstrated George Washington's ability clearly and forcefully to express his thoughts in writing, the governor had it printed immediately, and it helped to arouse the Colonies and British Government to the importance and difficulties of the problem.

Pending Washington's report, preparations had already been begun by the Ohio Company to build a fort at the junction of the Allegheny and the Monongahela Rivers, and to complete and defend this a regiment of Virginia volunteers was ordered recruited. Washington was commissioned on March 15, 1754, lieutenant colonel as second in command under Colonel Joshua Fry with the main body of the regiment later. But before the small detachment got over the mountains the French ejected the little group of about 40 engaged upon the fort, took possession, and renamed it Fort Duquesne.

Washington continued his march and held parleys with the Indians. On May 28 he attacked and captured a reconnoitering French force, and in doing so started the French and Indian War. Not succeeding in attaching the Indians to the English side and finding his advanced position otherwise untenable, he started to retire, but on July 3 surrendered to the French his hastily constructed works, called Fort Necessity. He had put up a valiant fight and was permitted to continue his march back to the Potomac. This was the only time he ever surrendered.

The news of this skirmish aroused both French and English to the imminence of conflict between them. However chagrined Colonel Washington may have felt over his first baptism of war, his position was so entirely all that could be expected that he received the thanks of the House of Burgesses.

The next turn in the wheel of fate brought General Braddock to America at the head of 2,000 smart British Regulars. He was a gallant officer of distinguished

record, but he was totally unfitted to cope with the Indian warfare, although convinced that he and the British Regulars would be impervious to any mishap, an opinion in which Washington and other colonists who were familiar with Indian warfare may not have agreed, in spite of the traditional respect for the professional.

Considerable, dissatisfaction had been aroused by the King's order that all provincial commissions were inferior in rank to the royal ones. General Braddock, having heard of Colonel Washington's exploits, invited him to become a special aid 'in his family, by which all inconvenience of that kind will be obviated.' To this invitation Colonel Washington replied, acknowledging frankly - 'an inclination to serve the ensuing campaign as a volunteer; and this inclination is not a little increased, since it is likely to be conducted by a gentleman of the General's experience. but, besides this, and the laudable desire I may have to serve, with my best abilities, my King and country, I must be ingenuous enough to confess, that I am not a little biassed by selfish considerations. To explain, Sir, I wish earnestly to attain some knowledge in the military profession, and, believing a more favorable opportunity cannot offer, than to serve under a gentleman of General Braddock's abilities and experience, it does, as may be reasonably suppose, not a little contribute to influence my choice.'

The catastrophe which followed, bringing to young Colonel Washington much bitter disillusionment and great responsibility, is best gathered from his letter to Governor Dinwiddie, giving his first account of the defeat of Braddock and his forces, July 9, 1755: 'We continue our March from Fort Cumberland to Frazier's (which is within 7 miles of Duquesne) without meeting any extraordinary event, having only a straggler or two picked up by the French Indians. When we came to this place, we were attacked (very unexpectedly) by about three hundred French and Indians.

Our numbers consisted of about thirteen hundred well armed men, chiefly Regulars, who were immediately struck with such an inconceivable panic, that nothing but confusion and disobedience of orders prevailed among them. The officers, in general, behaved with incomparable bravery, for which they greatly suffered, there being near 600 killed and wounded - a large proportion, out of the number we had! The Virginia companies behaved like men and died like soldiers; for I believe out of three companies that were on the ground that day scarce thirty were left alive. Capt.

Payrony and all his officers, down to a corporal, were killed; Capt. Polson had almost as hard a fate, for only one of his escaped. In short, the dastardly behaviour of the Regular troops (so-called) exposed those who were inclined to do their duty to almost certain death; and, at length, in spite of every effort to the contrary, broke and ran as sheep before hounds, leaving the artillery, ammunition, provisions, baggage, and in short, everything a prey to the enemy. And when we endeavoured to rally them, in hopes of regaining the ground and what we had left upon it, it was with as little success as if we had attempted to have stopped the wild bears of the mountains, or rivulets with our feet; for they would break by, in despite of every effort that

could be made to prevent it.'

In another letter George Washington expressed his utter disgust at the debacle, so contrary to the valor and record of the British Regular troops. He wrote: 'It is true, we have been beaten, shamefully beaten, by a handful of men, who only intended to molest and disturb our march. Victory was their smallest expectation.... had I not been witness to the fact on that fatal day, I should scarce have given credit to it even now.'

The British Regulars would have acquitted themselves with credit on a formal battle ground of Europe, but in the wilds of the American forests with Indians fighting from ambush they were helpless and terrified. George Washington had been so ill that on the march he had had to ride in one of the wagons, but was beside General Braddock at the time of the attack. As the other aides had soon been wounded, the carrying of the General's orders fell upon him. In constant danger, two horse were shot from under him, and four bullets went through his clothes. Although reported killed, he attributed his preservation to the all-powerful dispensations of Providence. Out of 1,373 noncommissioned officers and men, only 453 came off unharmed. Washington, however, underestimated considerably the French and Indian force.

The immediate effect of the defeat of Braddock's forces was disastrous; for Colonel Dunbar, who commanded the rear of Braddock's Army that had not participated in the battle, refused, after receiving the fugitives, to advance or even to stand his ground, but retreated to Fort Cumberland and then decided to place himself and his troops out of reach of such border warfare and withdrew his men to Philadelphia, leaving the entire border at the mercy of the raids of the French and Indians.

This emergency brought forth the convening of the House of Burgesses of the colony of Virginia by Governor Dinwiddie, which voted 40,000 pounds and authorized the raising of a regiment of 1,000 men. The governor gave George Washington a commission as colonel and commander in chief of all of the forces raised in Virginia for the protection of the frontier. This commission was the answer to the general demand for the services of George Washington, whose actions under all emergencies had been an unusual tribute to the qualities of a 23-year-old officer. To him it meant a constant struggle to organize forces for the defense of the border without the necessary means with which to do so.

He made sound and practical plans, but was not permitted to get them beyond the beginning of the central Fort Loudoun at Winchester. His own desire was for offensive operations, but he was overruled and forced to abide by the policy of a chain of small fortified posts, so poorly provided with men for their defense that they were helpless to defend their surrounding territory against Indian raids, which were growing steadily in frequency and in atrocity.

George Washington was gravely disturbed over the situation, and he wrote many letters in his efforts to induce the authorities to provide him with adequate

means to protect the border settlers. One of these shows how deeply he was stirred by the conditions: 'I see their situation, know their danger, and participate in their sufferings, without having it in my powere to give them further relief, than uncertain promises. In short, I see inevitable destruction in so clear a light, that, unless vigorous measures are taken by the Assembly, and speedy assistance sent from below, the poor inhabitants that are now in forts, must unavoidably fall while the remainder of the country are flying before the barbarous foe . . . The supplicating tears of women, and moving petitions from the men, melt me into such deadly sorrow, that I solemnly declare, if I know my own mind, I could offer myself a willing sacrifice to the butchering enemy, provided that would contribute to the people's ease.'

The Virginia authorities made some efforts to remedy these troubles, but there was a lack of intercolonial cooperation, and under the commanding generalship of Lord Loudoun, Virginia was not only left to its own defense but required to send troops to south Carolina. Recruiting was slow. Men were not willing to leave their homes and families, and George Washington had a most arduous service in trying to defend 350 miles of frontier with less than a thousand men. This condition continued through 1756-57. For two years there was nothing but a series of failures under Lord Loudoun until he was recalled. Then, when William Pitt became Prime Minister, the tide of the war turned in American.

Under his able administration the British actually began to send substantial military forces into America, with strong naval force to supplement them. France did not match these moves, and the French forces in America were abandoned to their fate. It was not until 1758 that the change of affairs brought relief to George Washington. He had always urged that an expedition be sent to Fort Duquesne, a center of border depredations, to destroy it.

At last, in 1758, the expedition was made a part of the energetic program for the year. The expedition was to be under Brigadier General Forbes, and Washington was to lead the Virginia troops, which had then been augmented to about 2,000. There were many long delays owing to the difficulty of preparations. This was the time when, owing to the shortage of regimental clothing, George Washington decided to fit out his command in the light Indian hunting garb.

This was a first departure from the cumbersome uniforms of the period. George Washington pointed out the advantages in comfort and the greater reduction of impedimenta to be transported. The serviceability of this Indian costume soon proved its utility, and George Washington was responsible for introducing an equipment which was to be of great value to Americans later in the Revolution.

George Washington was eager to move forward in short order, following the road made under such difficulty by Braddock. However, while these matters were being settled, he met, loved and wooed Martha Custis, and when he did start his march to Fort Duquesne, they were betrothed. Another honor came to him while on military duty was his election to the House of Burgesses of Virginia as representa-

tive for Frederick County. Military duty kept him from the polls, but he was elected by a large majority.

A notable contrast to General Braddock's disregard of George Washington's advice was the respect tendered his military opinions by General Forbes, who asked the young officer to make for him a plan of march, a tactical scheme for the conduct of an expeditionary force of 4,000 men. It was also astonishing to find the young officer fully prepared to offer the right solution to the problem with tactics so flexible as to change quickly a line of march into a battle line in the event of an attack. The value of this plan was so apparent that it was adopted and followed.

The above proves that George Washington had a grasp of military matters that was extraordinary. General Forbes's expedition advanced with painful slowness. Colonel Bouquet, who had advocated the new route, was energetic, but the making of the new road through the wilderness was very difficult, and the approach to Fort Duquesne was delayed until in danger of being halted by the winter weather. However, it was all settled by the capture of Fort Frontenac. After the defeat of General Abercromby in his attack on Fort Ticonderoga, July 8, 1758, Fort Frontenac had been left with only a little over a hundred men to garrison it and was therefore easily captured in August by a brilliant dash of Colonel Bradstreet across Lake Ontario with a force of 2,500 colonial troops.

The loss of this valuable French post cut the French line of communications, and by the time the Forbes expedition appeared the weakened forces at Fort Duquesne abandoned their isolated position. They had routed a rash advance force under Grant, but abandoned by their Indian allies, they could not withstand the main body and after burning their fort retreated up the Allegheny. It saved the situation, for General Forbes was then fatally ill. The fort was made defensible and renamed by him Fort Pitt (afterwards Pittsburgh).

Two hundred of Washington's Virginians were left as a garrison, and the expedition returned to Virginia. The downfall of Fort Duquesne ended the border troubles, just as George Washington had predicted it would, as it had been the base of all the Indian raiding activities. The restoration of order on the border ended the war for Virginia; the French being driven away, the end of 1758 was the end of George Washington's military service in the French and Indian War.

#### *The Commander In Chief*

As the Commander in Chief of the Continental Army the services and achievements of George Washington are unique in the world's history. He was much more than the Commander in Chief. He was the one necessary person, whose calm, unswerving, determined sense of patriotic duty to country, and ability put real backbone into the Revolution and kept it from collapsing or merging into a civil conflict, under the hardships and unexpected privations encountered during the eight years of war. Without General Washington at its head it could never have succeeded. His faith in

the cause and his devotion to the ideals it embodied made him the symbol of America -the spirit of the Revolution.

From boyhood on Washington lived in a military atmosphere much of his time. Under his brother's influence and direction he was trained in fencing, also probably in the manual of arms. He assumed service and responsibility in the Virginia militia; and by the time he was serving as an aide to General Braddock he made the assertion, 'My inclinations are strongly bent to arms.'

Each of the different tasks that fell to his hand seemed to contribute to the store of knowledge useful to him the next one to follow. His experience as a surveyor was a fine preparation for the dangerous mission to the Ohio with Governor Dinwiddie's letter to the French commander.

These gave him a real insight into pioneer settlement conditions, the wary methods of Indian warfare, and the difficulties of travel through unbroken forests in midwinter. The Braddock campaign taught him many of the weaknesses in the military system of training British Regular officers and men. He also had tragic evidence of the uselessness and folly of the pomp and display, and the paraphernalia of the formal English movements and practices and learned some vastly important facts of the helplessness of the British soldier in unfamiliar environment where his former European battlefield training could not be employed.

Witnessing all of the horrors of Braddock's defeat, more of a massacre than a battle, George Washington's personal courage had its baptism of fire and bore the acid test of every experience with honor. With two horses shot beneath him and four bullets through his coat, he not only continued his duties as aide but when General Braddock was mortally wounded and most of the other officers either killed or wounded, it was the young provincial colonel who took command of the remnant of the brilliant English Army and brought it and the wounded leader out of the terrifying forest ambush of Indians to safety.

Following this, his experiences of the French and Indian War gave him additional knowledge of border warfare, invaluable experience in training, disciplining, and subsisting his men far from their base of supplies, meeting every emergency and through resourcefulness and initiative creating out of every emergency opportunity to turn to the advantage of his forces. In these early days is said that fear had no part in his make-up.

Through his 15 years in the House of Burgesses his opinions were solidifying into fixed standards and settled convictions that were to hold him fast and keep him true to the defense of the principles of representative government for the Colonies. He had felt the spell of Patrick Henry's ringing challenges to the spirit of free-born Englishmen: 'If this be treason make the most of it -Give me liberty or give me death.'

He had absorbed the ideals that prompted protests, petitions, debates, discussions, had a voice in the Resolves, in the denunciations of the Stamp Act and the

Port Bill and call for a General Congress of the American Colonies to which he was a delegate. George Washington's power and personality must have been marked in this Congress, since Patrick Henry on being asked to name the greatest man in the Congress replied, 'If you speak of eloquence, Mr. Rutledge of South Carolina is by far the greatest orator; but if you speak of solid information and sound judgement, Colonel Washington is unquestionably the greatest man on the floor.'

In the Virginia Convention some time before he had expressed his stand on the closing of the port of Boston, thus: 'I will raise one thousand men, subsist them at my own expense and march myself at their head to the relief of Boston.'

Then came the news of April 18, 1775. Major Pitcairn of the British Army had fired upon the American militia, Major Pitcairn of the British Army had fired upon the American militia, assembled on Lexington Common, shouting, 'Dispense, ye rebels!' and thereby started the American Revolution. Washington at the second meeting of the Continental Congress, May 10, 1775, like his colleagues, realized that settling matters without conflict became impossible with the news of the bloodshed at Lexington and Concord.

Americans from 23 towns were found among the dead and wounded, and as the word spread the almost hourly appearance of more companies of armed men from far and near soon resulted in the assemblage of a determined army around Boston. This siege of Boston by its suddenness and the overwhelming numbers put a changed aspect upon the entire situation.

A royal governor was hemmed in, apparently with abundant naval and military forces to enforce his orders, but was unable to command a single bit of aid outside of Boston, where he was regarded merely as a military commander of a besieged town.

One of the first steps of the new Congress was to adopt the army gathered about Boston, calling it the Continental Army to distinguish it from that of England which they called the Ministerial Army. It then became necessary to give that body a leader - a commander in chief to handle it.

Opinions varied; several were ambitious for the post. George Washington, who, it is alleged, arrived clad in his uniform as a Colonel of Virginia forces, was named but was opposed by some of the delegates. However John Adams, of Massachusetts, nominated him, recording in his diary afterward much of his comments: 'I had no hesitation to declare that I had but one gentleman in my mind for that important command and that was a gentleman from Virginia, who was among us and very well known to all of us; a gentleman, whose skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents and excellent universal character would command the approbation of all America, and unite the cordial exertions of all the colonies better than any other person in the Union.'

The following day from his place in the assembly he accepted the appointment in a brief speech, in which he said: 'I beg they will accept my cordial thanks for this



distinguished testimony of their approbation. But lest some unlucky event should happen, unfavorable to my reputation, I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in the room that I this day declare with the utmost sincerity I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with. As to pay, Sir, I beg leave to assure the Congress that as no pecuniary consideration could have tempted me to accept this arduous employment at the expense of my domestic ease and happiness, I do not wish to make any profit from it. I will keep an exact account of my expenses. Those I doubt not they will discharge, and that is all I desire.'

General Washington, with his instructions and a packet of commissions for his staff of officers, made preparations to leave for Boston. Those to serve under him were Major Generals Artemus Ward, Charles Lee, Phillip Schuyler and Israel Putnam. Eight brigadier generals were also commissioned. These were Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, Nathanael Greene. At the General's request, Horatio Gates was appointed Adjutant General and given the rank of brigadier.

Before departing he wrote to Mrs. Washington, and among other things he said: 'You may believe me, my dear Patsy, when I assure you, in the most solemn manner, that, so far from seeking this appointment, I have used every endeavor in my power to avoid it, not only from my unwillingness to part with you and the family, but from a consciousness of its being a trust too great for my capacity, and that I should enjoy more happiness in one month with you at home than I have the most distant prospect of finding abroad.'

His anxiety for her was great. He was worried and anxious over her loneliness and uneasiness. He wrote to his stepson and desired that he and Nelly would stay at Mount Vernon with their mother. He wrote to his wife's relatives and friends asking them to visit her and keep up her spirits. 'My departure, will, I know be a cutting stroke upon her; and on this account alone I have many very disagreeable sensations.'

This done he set out for Boston, and en route the new Commander in Chief heard of the Battle of Bunker Hill which acquainted him with the spirit of his new force, and also with its problems. Twenty thousand minutemen and militia had gathered, made up of the farmers, fishermen, sailors, merchants, artisans of New England, with very little discipline and much confusion.

In taking over the command on July 3, 1775, from the temporary directions of General Artemus Ward, the Commander in Chief endeavored to infuse into his new Army something of the spirit of the task before them. He said: 'The Continental Congress having now taken all the Troops of the several Colonies, which have been raised, or which may be hereafter raised, for the support and defence of the Liberties of America; into their Pay and Service: They are now the Troops of the United Provinces of North America; and it is hoped that all Distinctions of Colonies will be laid aside; so that one and the same spirit may animate the whole, and the only contest be, who shall render, on this great and trying occasion, the most essential

Service to the great and common cause in which we are all engaged.'

To his utter dismay, he found that withal the imposing numbers of men before him there was not enough powder among them or available to put up even the feeblest resistance to an attack; and had the English not been so thoroughly astonished at the results of Lexington and Concord and Bunker Hill, they probably could have driven the provincial army from Boston, since they had abundant military and naval forces at their command.

However, they did not know the weaknesses of the colonial troops and one of General Washington's greatest policies of military strategy grew out of this crisis when he managed to keep his enemy in ignorance of his real strength by being apparently constantly preparing to attack. Sending Colonel Henry Knox in midwinter to bring on 42 oxen-drawn sleds and 59 cannon from Ticonderoga, Washington fortified Dorchester heights, which compelled General Howe to evacuate Boston, embarking his force for Halifax.

Howe left a supply of cannon, small arms, powder, and other important military stores to the value of forty to fifty thousand pounds, very welcome to an army that had been watchfully waiting for weary months without sufficient powder for each soldier. This first score for the Americans in putting the enemy to flight was a bitter blow to British pride and a great encouragement to the Americans, and it placed the war on a different basis.

Never has New York seen a more brilliant military pageant than assembled off Gravesend during July and August, 1776, when General Howe and his forces arrived from Halifax and was joined by his brother, Lord Howe, admiral of the British fleet, with between three and four hundred ships, with the Germans hired to aid the British in subduing the colonists. Sir Henry Clinton also arrived with troops from the south, and fully 30,000 veteran soldiers stood ready to annihilate the American Army, which never attained greater numbers than 18,000 men.

The English planned to seize New York and then the rest of the country, quickly subdue the Colonials, and bring the war to a speedy end. As they landed and established themselves in and around New York, General Washington kept close watch upon their movements. He had 9,000 men in a fortified camp at Brooklyn, and on August 22, when he learned that the enemy had landed 10,000 men and 40 cannon at the lower end of Long Island, he endeavored to encourage his men in the following brief address:

'The enemy have now landed on Long Island and the hour is fast approaching on which the honor and success of his army and the safety of our bleeding country depend. Remember, officers and soldiers, that you are freemen fighting for the blessings of liberty -that slavery will be your portion and that of your posterity if you do not acquit yourselves like men.'

Despite his instructions and watchfulness, a road or pass was left unguarded, and the British discovering this, overwhelmed and defeated the Americans, driving

them to their entrenchments before General Washington arrived on the scene. however, it cost the British such heavy losses that General Howe delayed following his advantage. This Battle of Long Island, one of the most spectacular engagements of the Revolution, although a defeat for the American Army, was also a defeat of the main object of General Howe's plans -to get the entire American Army in combat at one time after the methods of European warfare, in which event he felt assured of a complete victory that would at one settle the status of the rebellious Americans. This purpose General Washington had divined and thwarted.

While General Howe was deliberating his next move General Washington quietly secured all available boats of every kind and had them sent to him at Brooklyn, where he personally directed the removal of the soldiers with their arms, ammunition, baggage, supplies, horses, carts, etc., out of reach of the enemy under cover of night and a dense fog, and put a river between them before morning without the loss of a man or their departure being prematurely discovered.

By the time Washington had withdrawn his forces from Manhattan Island and established them at White Plains, he had learned enough of the British methods of fighting to realize thoroughly that unless the British soldiers could fight according to their long and rigid European training, after the method of Frederick the Great, they were at great disadvantage. He, therefore, endeavored at all times to defeat the attempts to get his Army as a whole in a battle line. He also early learned the value of camouflage.

The breastworks thrown up overnight and covered with hastily pulled cornstalks with the dirt clinging to their roots would not have offered much resistance to an attacking enemy, but this deception helped to rob the British victory at White Plains, on October 28, of the full measure of advantage, by inspiring General Howe with such a dread of the possible American strength that he deliberated two days before following up his advantage and awoke to find that General Washington had again slipped his entire Army from beneath his grasp.

But shortly after this the capture of Forts Washington and Mifflin, which guarded the Hudson, compelled Washington to retreat across New Jersey, and on December 8, 1776, he crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania, with Cornwallis close upon his heels. The American General avoided pursuit only by securing all of the boats on the river. Cornwallis regarded the Continental Army with such contempt that he did not feel the necessity of putting forth any extra effort to catch up with the Americans or to push on to take Philadelphia, and after stationing his troops in various places in New Jersey he returned to New York. At Trenton he had left a body of Hessians under Colonel Rahl. When this officer asked General Grant for reinforcements the latter replied, 'I will undertake to keep the peace in New Jersey with a corporal's guard.'

General Washington, feeling the importance of some decisive activity on the part of his army so soon to be depleted by the termination of the short time enlist-

ments, staged a desperate venture at a time when the tide of public opinion and the morale of the Army was at its lowest ebb, and when he knew the British least expected it. He resolved to surprise the Hessians and seize Trenton while they were lulled to security and absorbed in Christmas festivities.

The story of the crossing of the ice-filled Delaware on a dark and stormy night is family history. So also the gallant courage of his men, marching 9 miles in the teeth of a sleet and snowstorm which disabled their muskets. Under the bitter cold two men died, but the surprise and the complete victory all came to pass just as General Washington planned and expected. Hope was revived, and under the inspiration of the hour money and men materialized.

Cornwallis, appalled at the American victory of Trenton, returned to resume charge of New Jersey activities. On January 2, 1777, General Washington awaited him across the Assumpink River with 5,000 troops and repulsed his attempts to cross. Arriving in the afternoon he decided to await making the attack until morning, saying, 'We may easily bag the fox in the morning.' During the night General Washington executed another of his brilliant moves and made his way to Princeton and engaged the troops left there. In the conflict that followed General Washington by his example and presence inspired his men to victory and then marched them to Morristown, where they went into winter quarters. During this period he pledged his own private fortune for the pay of the soldiers, and his example was followed by some of his officers.

The result of this short campaign of only three weeks has been expressed by a modern British historian: 'As things fell out, the whole cause of the revolution in America was saved by Washington's bold and skillful action. The spirits of the revolutionary party revived; and an advance of 5,000 militia upon Kingsbridge showed Howe that enemies were ready to swarm upon him from every side at the first sign of a British reverse . . . the whole of the work excepting the capture of New York required to be done again.'

The struggle to keep and increase the American Army during the winter at Morristown is expressed forcefully by this British writer: 'The military force which Washington brought into shape at Morristown -waxing or waning in numbers but constantly improving in quality -followed him obediently, resolutely, and devotedly as long as their country had occasion for a general and an Army.'

During the months of anxious watching of Howe he kept his army ready to proceed northward or to Philadelphia. The British forces outnumbered his own three to two and were equipped to the highest efficiency, while the Americans were but poorly supplied. When Howe finally made his approach to Philadelphia through Chesapeake Bay, Washington confronted him at Brandywine Creek September 11, but was defeated through the frustration of General Sullivan's part of the plan.

General Howe took possession of Philadelphia, and General Washington watched for the opportune moment to make an attack upon the troops. This he did

near Germantown on October 5, 1777, and there was early promise of a victory, but the whole plan was spoiled by the confusion due to a thick fog, which prevented coordination. The Americans even made the mistake of attacking each other. It is said that General Washington always believed that the Americans had retreated at the instant when victory was near.

Although unsuccessful, the battle showed that the Americans possessed a spirit that the defeat at Brandywine had not impaired, and its general effect was favorable. October 17, 1777, Burgoyne surrendered at Saratoga to the army under Gates; and this fact, aided by the influence of Lafayette and Benjamin Franklin eventually secured the French alliance with the aid of money, men and ships.

Meanwhile, General Howe went into winter quarters in Philadelphia, and General Washington and his army went to Valley Forge December 19, 1777, where he could watch Howe's army and guard the country about Philadelphia. Howe's admission that he had no hope of ending the war without 10,000 more troops proved that the Americans had scored beyond their hopes in 1777.

The rigor and hardships of Valley Forge would have vanquished any other man but General Washington. Owing to the inefficiency of the commissary departments fully 2,898 soldiers in camp in Valley Forge were unfit for duty because they were barefoot and destitute of clothing. At times there was not three days provisions for men or horses in camp and often not sufficient for one day.

It was in the midst of this poverty and privation that Baron von Steuben began his work of drill and discipline. He aroused the enthusiasm of the officers, and they imbibed his zeal, with a result in morale and efficiency that was astonishing and which continued in spite of Washington's failure to convince Congress and the States of the futility of short-term enlistments. Within a few months von Steuben was a witness to the effect of his training in the turning of the tide at Monmouth.

The year 1778 brought the departure of Howe, and Sir Henry Clinton succeeded him. Clinton soon decided to evacuate Philadelphia and move his forces to New York. This they did by such slow marches that the Americans came upon them at Monmouth on June 28, led by Major General Lee, who for no cause whatever ordered a retreat, to the astonishment of Wayne and Lafayette. However, General Washington came riding out to meet Lee and, seeing his men in retreat, severely reprimanded Lee, took command of the situation, and turned the tide against the enemy so strongly that after nightfall they slipped away to New York. After two years of war the British were again confined to the city, and Washington was again at White Plains. There was no further attempt to conquer the Northern States; and the military situation was such as to be proof positive that General Washington had accomplished his entire object against the British, whose attempt to overrun the country he had entirely defeated; baffling and outwitting a superior army still huddled on the coast.

The British then attempted to subjugate the South, while continuing to hold New York against Washington's immediate army. Watching the ebb and flow of con-

flict in the South, minor engagements along the Hudson, the problem of cooperative movement with the French Army and fleet, the ever-present financial deficiency, the treason of Arnold, with many lesser vicissitudes, kept the Commander in Chief of the American Army constantly alert and watchful of the next move in the conflict, until the exciting close of hostilities at Yorktown in 1781.

When the Revolution began and General Washington, unlike the British generals against whom he was fighting and the French generals with whom he became associated, had no powerful organized central government back of him to keep him supplied with the sinews and munitions of war, with its bureaus and departments to facilitate the conduct of military campaigns.

Instead, only an elective committee represented all the Colonies. To secure supplies became the all-important issue and the never-ending struggle. Jealousy between the States north and south and the personal jealousy not only of ambitious officers, but of Congress, lest General Washington become too popular, brought upon his head petty slights and indifference from the very agencies that should have given him the utmost support in their power. Criticism of every act also hampered him, and his military skill was even disputed and belittled. He was criticized for inactivity, though in most cases when a council of officers was called to decide upon an attack the General's opinion was outvoted. However, it is noticeable that when he did decide to follow his own judgement for action brilliant victories were usually the result.

He was a past master at strategy and planned strategy for each campaign and for the war as a whole. He had to be commander, chief engineer, chief of intelligence, soldier, judge, statesman, quartermaster, commissary head, sanitary head, and not only take orders from Congress but also to advise Congress on legislative matters. He had to pledge his own fortune to keep soldiers in the service, which the short-time enlistment policy of Congress kept in a constantly moving procession of partly trained men going through the ranks, many of them remaining less than three months.

Incapable of fear, the same indifference to his own personal safety which characterized his actions through the Braddock Expedition and the French and Indian War, was the source of great uneasiness to his men. One of his officers wrote: 'Our army love their General very much, but they have one thing against him which is the little care he takes of himself in any action. His personal bravery and the desire he has of animating his troops by example, make him fearless of danger. This occasions much uneasiness.'

Although considered stern, cold, and remote, commanding the respect of the rank and file and the public by the forcefulness of his personality and his high character, he was not a hard man or a martinet. He suffered in sympathy for his ragged, half-starved, poorly-fed soldiers and shared every privation with them. For more than six years, although often within a couple of hundred miles of his own home of ease and plenty, he did not visit it. Despite his formal and austere manner, every man in the ranks knew that he had the complete sympathy of his Commander and rest-

ed in the assurance of his justice.

Through the long struggle when every victory seemed to be checked by a defeat, when disloyalty, indifference, and treason in his own official family added to the burden of that which he carried, he never faltered at the rigors imposed not for a moment let go of the conviction that ultimate victory was to come. Washington's constant retreating before the British Army brought upon him much severe criticism, but in the end those who so bitterly assailed him for this seeming lack of success were forced to admit that an open fight would have crushed the Continental Army.

General Washington considered the Revolution as a war of posts. He urged against the danger of dividing and subdividing forces, so that no one would be sufficiently guarded, saying 'It is a military observation strongly supported by experience that a superior force may fall a sacrifice to an inferior by an injudicious division.' General Washington, observing this weakness in operation of the English forces, said before the Revolution was even a third of its way, 'I am well convinced myself, that the enemy long ere this, are perfectly satisfied that the possession of our towns while we have an army in the field will avail them little.'

The English had not been able to keep to the field against the Americans. They seemed unable to occupy American territory away from the sea. At the end of the year 1778 they were held on the defensive in New York and in Newport where they could be supplied by the navy. Although they had unlimited resources, they conceded themselves defeated in their effort to subdue the Northern States. This very fact is the greatest praise of General Washington's military skill -he outgeneraled them -and is the incontestable proof of General Washington's greatness as a military leader.

The greatest task that fell so heavily on the Commander was that of keeping his army actually in existence. Here his great business training and ability showed itself. The British could and did repeatedly beat the Continental Army, but they could not beat General Washington. Neither abuse, attack, defeat, nor discontentment could make him resign, and as long as he was in the field he was the rallying point for whatever fighting spirit could still be aroused.

General Washington had early formulated a set of six rules for his military guidance, by which he measured and directed the actions of his Army and followed to the letter himself. They are: Never attack a position in front which you can gain by turning. Charges of Cavalry should be made if possible on the flanks of infantry.

The first qualification of a soldier is fortitude under fatigue and privation. Courage is only the second. Hardship, poverty and actual want are the soldier's best school.

Nothing is so important in war as an undivided command.

Never do what the enemy wishes you to do.

A General of ordinary talent, occupying a bad position and surprised by superior force, seeks safety in retreat; but a great captain supplies all deficiencies by his courage and marches boldly to meet the attack.

While the Conway Cabal was exercising its spell over Congress the Commander in Chief, stung to retort by the criticism of lack of activity of the military under such conditions, wrote that body: 'I am informed that it is a matter of amazement and that reflections have been thrown out against this army for not being more active and enterprising. In the opinion of some they ought to have been. If the charge is just, the best way to account for it will be to refer you to the returns of our strength and those I can produce of the enemy and to the enclosed abstract of the clothing now actually wanting for the army. I can assure these gentleman (he said in reply to political criticism) that it is much easier and less distressing a thing to draw remonstrances in a comfortable room by a good fireside than to occupy a cold bleak hillside and sleep under snow, without clothes or blankets.'

The soldiers felt perfect confidence in the wise leadership of the Commander in Chief, and his splendid courage, foresight, and marvelous ability to endure won the final liberty of the long-suffering Colonies. He held the Army together and through his letters to Congress prevented that body from doing too many unwise things that would have spoiled completely his carefully laid plans. The end of the long struggle for liberty came on October 19, 1781, with the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown. On November 20, 1782, Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, and on September 3, 1783, a treaty of peace was signed at Versailles in France, and America was free.

General Washington, wise and unselfish Commander of a tattered citizen soldiery, wrung victory from the seasoned legions of Europe under discouragements that would have crushed any save an indomitable spirit. Of his leadership and skill Von Moltke is quoted as saying in Berlin in 1974: 'You have in American history one of the great captains of all times. It might be said of him, as it was of William the Silent, that he seldom won a battle but he never lost a campaign.'

### **Washington's First Inaugural Address**

At his first inauguration, George Washington took the oath of office for the presidency on April 30, 1789. He was standing on the balcony of Federal Hall in New York City with his hand on an open Bible. After he finished taking the oath, the audience in attendance gave a thunderous ovation and bells of the various churches began ringing in his honor. After his oath of office was completed, he went to deliver his inaugural address to Congress.

Such being the impressions under which I have, in obedience to the public summons, repaired to the present station, it would be peculiarly improper to omit, in this first official act, my fervent supplications to that Almighty Being who rules over the universe, who presides in the councils of nations and whose providential aid can supply every human defect, that His benediction may consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States a Government instituted by themselves



for these essential purposes; and may enable every instrument employed in its administration to execute with success, the functions allotted to his charge.

In tendering this homage to the Great Author of every public and private good, I assure myself that it expresses your sentiments not less than my own; nor those of my fellow-citizens at large, less than either. No people can be bound to acknowledge and adore the Invisible Hand which conducts the affairs of men more than the people of the United States.

Every step by which they have advanced to the character of an independent nation seems to have been distinguished by some token of providential agency; and in the important revolution just accomplished in the system of their United government, the tranquil deliberations and voluntary consent of so many distinct communities, from which the event has resulted can not be compared with the means by which most governments have been established, without some return of pious gratitude, along with an humble anticipation of the future blessings which them past seem to presage.

These reflections, arising out of the present crisis, have forced themselves too strongly on my mind to be suppressed. You will join with me I trust in thinking, that there are none under the influence of which the proceedings of a new and free Government can more auspiciously commence.

We ought to be no less persuaded that the propitious smiles of Heaven can never be expected on a nation that disregards the eternal rules of order and right which Heaven itself has ordained; and since the preservation of sacred fire of liberty and the destiny of the republican model of government are justly considered as deeply, perhaps finally, staked of the experiment...

I shall take my present leave; but not without resorting once more to the Benign Parent of the Human Race, in humble supplication that, since He has been pleased to favor the American people with opportunities for deliberating in perfect tranquility, and dispositions for deciding with unparalleled unanimity on a form of government for the security of their union and the advancement of their happiness, so His divine blessings may be equally conspicuous in the enlarged views, the temperate consultations and the wise measures on which the success of this Government must depend.

## ABRAHAM LINCOLN IN HISTORY

LINCOLN warned the South in his Inaugural Address: 'In your hands, my dissatisfied fellow countrymen, and not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war. The government will not assail you.... You have no oath registered in Heaven to destroy the government, while I shall have the most solemn one to preserve, protect and defend it.'

Lincoln thought secession illegal, and was willing to use force to defend Federal law and the Union. When Confederate batteries fired on Fort Sumter and forced its surrender, he called on the states for 75,000 volunteers. Four more slave states joined the Confederacy but four remained within the Union. The Civil War had begun. The son of a Kentucky frontiersman, Lincoln had to struggle for a living and for learning. Five months before receiving his party's nomination for President, he sketched his life:

'I was born Feb. 12, 1809, in Hardin County, Kentucky. My parents were both born in Virginia, of undistinguished families -second families, perhaps I should say. My mother, who died in my tenth year, was of a family of the name of Hanks.... My father removed from Kentucky to Indiana, in my eighth year. It was a wild region, with many bears and other wild animals still in the woods. There I grew up. Of course when I came of age I did not know much. Still somehow, I could read, write, and cipher but that was all.'

Lincoln made extraordinary efforts to attain knowledge while working on a farm, splitting rails for fences, and keeping store at New Salem, Illinois. He was a captain in the Black Hawk War, spent eight years in the Illinois legislature, and rode the circuit of courts for many years. His law partner said of him, 'His ambition was a little engine that knew no rest.'

He married Mary Todd, and they had four boys, only one of whom lived to maturity. In 1858 Lincoln ran against Stephen A. Douglas for Senator. He lost the election, but in debating with Douglas he gained a national reputation that won him the Republican nomination for President in 1860. As President, he built the Republican Party into a strong national organization. Further, he rallied most of the northern Democrats to the Union cause. On January 1, 1863, he issued the Emancipation Proclamation that declared forever free those slaves within the Confederacy.

Lincoln never let the world forget that the Civil War involved an even larger issue. This he stated most movingly in dedicating the military cemetery at Gettysburg: 'that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain - that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom -and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.'

Lincoln won re-election in 1864, as Union military triumphs heralded an end to the war. In his planning for peace, the President was flexible and generous, encouraging Southerners to lay down their arms and join speedily in reunion. The spirit that guided him was clearly that of his Second Inaugural Address, now inscribed on one wall of the Lincoln Memorial in Washington, D. C.: 'With malice toward none; with charity for all; with firmness in the right, as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in; to bind up the nation's wounds...'

On Good Friday, April 14, 1865, Lincoln was assassinated at Ford's Theatre in Washington by John Wilkes Booth, an actor, who somehow thought he was helping the South. The opposite was the result, for with Lincoln's death, the possibility of peace with magnanimity died. President's Day: United in Service take a look at presidential biographies made by kids and videos about service from the President's Council on Service and Civic Participation.

## NAPOLEON BONAPARTE IN HISTORY

NAPOLEON Bonaparte was born in Ajaccio (Corsica), second son of Charles Marie Bonaparte and Maria Letizia Ramolino. He was Emperor of the French, 1804-1815. Napoleon Bonaparte was received his military education at Brienne and entered the army in 1785. He was a Jacobin, distinguished himself as a captain of artillery at the seige of Toulon in 1793. He was disgraced and briefly imprisoned after the Thermidor. He put down the Vendémiaire uprising in 1795, and was pardoned at Barras in 1796 by the commander of the army of Italy following a lightning victory over the Peimontias and Austrians. (*Le Tambour d'Arcole*, Cadenet) From this brilliant victory, he created the Cisalpine Republic and imposed peace with the Campo-Formio treaty of 18 Oct 1797.

In 1796, Napoleon married Joséphine de Beauharnais. Napoleon commanded an Egyptian expedition in 1798-99 intended to cut off Britain's route to India. He defeated the Turks (Mamelukes) in Syria at the Battle of the Pyramids in 1798. He was then marooned in Egypt when his fleet was destroyed by Nelson at Aboukir, at the Battle of the Nile. He escaped from Egypt the following year to return home. In Oct 1799 he returned to France. The moderates gave him the job of getting rid of the Consulate (*directoire*), which was accomplished by the coup d'Etat of 9-10 Nov (18 brumaire, year VIII). Napoleon became Premier Consul, and imposed an authoritarian constitution on the country. During the winter of 1800 he reorganized the country, centralizing the economy, justice, education and the administration (with *prefets* to head the departments).

In 1801 he lead a second Italian campaign. Following victories over Austria at Maengo (1800) and Hohenlinden (1801), he imposed the Lunéville peace treaty on Austria, giving control of Italy and the left bank of the Rhine to France. Also in 1801, Napoleon signed a concordat with the Church.

In 1802 at Amiens he signed a general peace treaty with the English. He became Consul for life, president of the Italian Republic and Mediator of the *Confédération Helvétique* (Switzerland). In 1803 he added in Reorganizer of Germany. A new war with Britain was threatening, and when he discovered a royalist plot against his government, he declared himself Emperor of the French (in 1804) and King of Italy (1805). Titled Napoleon 1st, he established an hereditary monarchy. He continued with his reorganization and centralization, establishing the civil Napoleonic Code, an imperial University, the *Légion d'Honneur* and the *Banque* de France.

The Napoleonic Wars with Europe took place in 1803-15. He had a series of brilliant victories, including Ulm (1805), Austerlitz (1805), Jena (1806), Friedland (1807) and Wagram (1809). He did less well at sea, being defeated by Nelson at Trafalgar in 1805. (Nelson won the battle but was killed during the fighting.)

Napoleon tried to defeat Britain with the Continental System, an economic blockade. By 1808 he controlled all of continental Europe, with members of the Bonapart family ruling many of the puppet kingdoms. In 1810, Napoleon's marriage to Joséphine was annulled and he married Marie-Louise. He eventually made their son the King of Rome. During the Peninsular War of 1808-14 (just one part of the Napoleonic Wars) against the British and Spanish, over 200,000 French troops were tied up in Spain, weakening Napoleon's power elsewhere. In the end the French were driven out of Iberia in 1814.

Napoleon invaded Russia in 1812, resulting in his famous retreat from Moscow that same winter. The remains of his army were defeated at the Battle of the Nations in 1813. In 1814 Napoleon abdicated and was exiled to Elba.

### **Napoleon's History**

Napoleon Bonaparte was born on August 15, 1769 in Ajaccio on the Mediterranean island of Corsica. Through his military exploits and his ruthless efficiency, Napoleon rose from obscurity to become Napoleon I, Empereur des Français (Emperor of the French). He is both a historical figure and a legend -and it is sometimes difficult to separate the two. The events of his life fired the imaginations of great writers, film makers, and playwrights whose works have done much to create the Napoleonic legend.

Napoleon decided on a military career when he was a child, winning a scholarship to a French military academy. His meteoric rise shocked not only France but all of Europe, and his military conquests threatened the stability of the world.

Napoleon was one of the greatest military commanders in history. He has also been portrayed as a power hungry conqueror. Napoleon denied being such a conqueror. He argued that he was building a federation of free peoples in a Europe united under a liberal government. But if this was his goal, he intended to achieve it by taking power in his own hands.

However, in the states he created, Napoleon granted constitutions, introduced law codes, abolished feudalism, created efficient governments and fostered education, science, literature and the arts.

Emperor Napoleon proved to be an excellent civil administrator. One of his greatest achievements was his supervision of the revision and collection of French law into codes. The new law codes -seven in number -incorporated some of the freedoms gained by the people of France during the French revolution, including religious toleration and the abolition of serfdom. The most famous of the codes, the Code Napoleon or Code Civil, still forms the basis of French civil law. Napoleon also centralized France's government by appointing prefects to administer regions

called departments, into which France was divided. Napoleon's own opinion of his career is best stated in the following quotation:

I closed the gulf of anarchy and brought order out of chaos. I rewarded merit regardless of birth or wealth, wherever I found it. I abolished feudalism and restored equality to all regardless of religion and before the law. I fought the decrepit monarchies of the Old Regime because the alternative was the destruction of all this. I purified the Revolution.

The widespread notion of Napoleon's shortness lies in the inaccurate translation of old French feet ('pieds de roi') to English. The French measure of five foot two (5' 2"), recorded at his autopsy, actually translates into five feet six and one half inches (5' 6.5") in English measure, which was about the average height of the Frenchman of his day. It is also probable that the men of his Imperial Guard, with whom he 'hung out,' were very tall, creating the illusion that Napoleon was short. If you are aware of books, movies, databases, web sites or other information sources about Napoleon Bonaparte or related subjects, or if you would like to submit comments please send us email.

Napoleon Bonaparte, who is also known as the 'little Corsican', was born on August 15, 1769 in Ajaccio, Corsica. He was known as the little Corsican because of his height of 5 feet 2 inches (which was measured as 5' 6" in the British system). He had 7 brothers and sisters. His original name was Napoleone Buonaparte in Corsica but it became Napoleon Bonaparte in French. His parents were Carlo (Charles) Buonaparte (1746-1785) and Letizia Ramolino Buonaparte (1750-1836).

His original nationality was Corsican-Italian. He despised the French. He thought they were oppressors of his native land. His father was a lawyer, and was also anti-French. One reason Napoleon may have been such a conqueror was he was raised in a family of radicals. When Napoleon was nine, his father sent him to a French military government school. He attended Brienne in Paris. While there, he was constantly teased by the French students. Because of this, Napoleon started having dreams of personal glory and triumph.

In 1784 to 1785, Napoleon attended Ecole, Militaire in Paris. That was the place where he received his military training. He studied to be an artillery man and an officer. He finished his training and joined the French army when he was 16 years old! Napoleon was a National Guard for Corsica until 1793 when Corsica declared independence. Napoleon and his family then fled to France. He was then assigned, as a captain, to an army that was besieging Toulon.

Napoleon soon took over France. His goal was to conquer all of Europe. Through out his lifetime he nearly succeeded in his goal. Napoleon was probably one of the greatest military leaders that ever lived. After the French monarchy was overthrown on August 10, 1792, Napoleon decided to make his move up in the ranks. After this, Napoleon started becoming a recognized officer.

## **Napoleon's Rise To Power And Conquests**

In 1792, Napoleon was promoted to the rank of captain. In 1793, he was chosen to direct the artillery against the siege in Toulon. He seized ground where he could get his guns in range of the British ships. Soon after that Toulon fell and Napoleon was promoted to the rank of brigadier general. In 1795, he saved the revolutionary government by dispersing a group of rioting citizens by using his famous 'Whiff of grapeshot' -He loaded a bunch of pellets into a cannon and fired it at the crowd.

Napoleon was made commander of the French army in Italy. He defeated four Austrian generals in succession, and each army he fought got bigger and bigger. This forced Austria and its allies to make peace with France. But after this, Napoleon was relieved of his command. He was poor, he was suspected of treason, he had no friends. No one would have suspected what Napoleon would do next.

In 1796, Napoleon was appointed to put down a revolt in Paris. He calmly took complete control of the situation. He just had his men shoot all the rebels in the streets. The French government was saved, but they decided to Under the new government, Napoleon was made commander of the French army in Italy. During this campaign, the French realized how smart Napoleon was. He developed a tactic that worked very efficiently. He would cut the enemy's army in to two parts, then throw all his force on one side before the other side could rejoin them. This method was extremely effective against the Sardinian troops, because he defeated them five times in 11 days! This made the King of Sardinia to try to make peace with France. Napoleon could not be stopped. He was a fast thinker who moved his troops extremely fast. Soon, instead of taking the defensive position, Napoleon started taking the offensive position and thus, he started his conquest of Europe.

He started his attack on Austria. It was his first big campaign. During one attack, he showed his bravery by forcing his way across a burning bridge. After that his troops gave him the name 'Petit Caporal' or in English 'Little Corporal'. He then attacked the Austrians in Mantua. Austria sent troops there four times, and every time Napoleon crushed them. In 1797, he came within 80 miles of Vienna when Austria surrendered.

Napoleon had won 14 pitched battles and 70 combats. He had made the rich lands he conquered feed and pay the French soldiers. Plus millions of francs were sent to France. This helped France's poor economy tremendously. Napoleon negotiated a treaty called Campo Formio with Austria. Austria gave up Netherlands and Lombardy to France. Austria also recognized the Rhine as the eastern boundary of France. In return, France gave Austria most of the old Venetian Republic.

When Napoleon returned to Paris, he received a huge welcome. He then began thinking of pursuing political power and military power. He wanted to become the next Alexander the Great, so he asked the Directory if he could take a large army to Egypt. That way he could conquer an empire that included Egypt, India, and other middle and Far East places. Napoleon came up with a neat idea to accomplish this. If he conquered Egypt, he could attack the English's route to India.

He won the battle of the Pyramids in July 1798.

But his fleet was destroyed at the Battle of the Nile in Aboukir Bay. So, Napoleon decided to invade Syria. The English and Turkish troops in Syria had held up against Napoleon. Napoleon then retreated to Egypt. Then later in July 1799, he defeated 10,000 Turks at Aboukir. He returned to France shortly after. Napoleon returned to find the Directory a mess. He, in his selfish way, saw this as the perfect time for self-advancement. Napoleon worked with Emmanuel Sieyes to overthrow the Directory, succeeding on 9 November 1799 - 18 Brumaire, by the Revolutionary calendar.

Napoleon set up a government called the Consulate. He was the first of three consuls. About three years later the grateful French nation voted in a plebiscite to make him Consul for life. Everyone in France loved Napoleon at that time. Then he started increasing his power...

### **Napoleon The Emperor**

Napoleon became known as Napoleon I, Emperor of the French, instead of General Bonaparte. He had complete political and military power in France. But alas, he still hadn't built up his great Eastern Empire. He wanted to recreate the empire Charlemagne was ruler of many years ago. The Austrians had been defeated at Marengro.

The German states and England were tired of fighting so they signed a peace treaty of Aimens in 1802. This was the first time since 1792 that France was at peace with the whole world! During the next 14 months of peace, Napoleon drastically altered Europe. He became president of the Italian Republic and reshaped Switzerland with France. He annexed Piedmont, Parma, and the island of Elba to France.

Napoleon also reshaped a lot of France. He re-established the University of France, reformed the education system, and founded the Bank of France and the Legion of Honor. He also codified the Napoleonic Code: The first clear, compact statement of the French law. The Napoleonic Code has served as a base for legal systems around the world! Napoleon's most lasting effect on France and much of the world was the set of civil laws that he instituted that still bears his name to this day. This code was so impressive that by 1960 over 70 different states either modeled their own laws after them or adopted them verbatim. The Code of Napoleon took the over 14,000 decrees that had been passed under the Revolutionary Government and simplified them into one unified set of laws. The Code had several key concepts at its core:

*Equality of all in the eyes of the law*

*No recognition of privileges of birth (i.e. noble rights inherited from ancestors)*

*Freedom of religion*

*Separation of the church and the state*

*Freedom to work in an occupation of one's choice*



*Strengthening the family by:*

*Placing emphasis on the husband and father as the head of the family*

*Restricting grounds for divorce to three reasons: adultery, conviction of a serious crime and grave insults, excesses or cruelty; however divorce could be granted by mutual agreement, as long as the grounds were kept private.*

*Defining who could inherit the family property*

*The Code in effect did several things:*

*It preserved the social aims of the Revolution.*

*It protected the interests of the rising middle class.*

*It guaranteed civil liberties.*

## **Napoleon And Education**

The best way to keep one's word is not to give it -Napoleon Bonaparte. Napoleon has been given much credit for modernizing France's educational system. Among the institutions he set up and expanded were:

1. Primary schools in every commune under the general supervision of the prefects or sub-prefects.
2. Secondary or grammar schools that were under the control of the central government.
3. Lycees (high schools) in every important town, with teachers appointed by the central government
4. Technical Schools, civil service schools, and military schools were regulated by the State
5. Establishment of the University of France to maintain uniformity in the education system
6. Centralized recruitment and training of teachers

Napoleon's goals for improving education in France were not altruistic. After coming to power he discovered he did not have enough trained personnel to administer his empire. This included architects, engineers, and scientists. Additionally he viewed education as a means of indoctrinating the masses with the right principles. This meant removing education from the control of the church and placing it under state control. (This was something the Revolution had only partially achieved.) That being said, he expected two things from the schools. First was the training of middle-class boys to be civil and military leaders. Secondly, he wanted the educational system to be absolutely uniform. He wanted to be able to pull his watch out of his pocket at any time and tell what was going on at any school.

How successful was he at achieving these goals is questionable. By 1812, it was estimated that only one child in eight was enrolled in a primary school. The institutes of higher learning had a large percentage of its students in professional studies, with almost 30% studying medicine or science. However, 'the difficulty of finding subordinates with the technical training to execute his industrial and engineering projects,

and the bent of his own genius, led Napoleon to emphasize the training of the scientist as equally important with the training of the scholar, and his efforts helped to make France the home of scientific thought in the early years of the nineteenth century.' As an indoctrinating tool, it was more successful. In the latter years of the Empire, when manpower became scarce, French teenagers on the whole, enthusiastically responded to the call to arms even after almost twenty years of continual warfare.

### **Resumption Of War In Europe**

*'Take time to deliberate, but when the time for action has arrived, stop thinking and go.'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

In 1803, war broke out again, this time between France and England. Russia, Austria and Sweden allied with Britain forming The Third Coalition against the French. Napoleon didn't have any trouble with this. He defeated Austria and Russia at Austerlitz on December 2, 1805. He crushed the Prussians at Jena and defeated more Russians at Friedland. He then created a peace treaty called the Peace of Tilsit that brought all of Europe to his feet.

Napoleon had planned to invade England whom he called 'a nation of shopkeepers' but the 'right moment' never showed up. (or was it too late?) In preparation for that war, he sold Louisiana to the United States for \$15 million dollars to raise funds for his wars. England's navy, under the capable hands of Admiral Lord Horatio Nelson, crushed Napoleon's sea power together with the Spanish fleet at Trafalgar Cape on October 21, 1805.

With his defeat at Trafalgar, Napoleon went back to the drawing board figure out how to defeat the British. Meanwhile back in France, the people allowed Napoleon to remove the Consulate and turn it into an empire. He decided to hand the throne down to his descendants. But there was one problem: He had no descendants! He ended his marriage to Josephine de Beauharnais in 1809 and remarried in 1810.

He married Hapsburg Archduchess Marie Louise, who was the daughter of the Austrian emperor. Well, he got what he wanted, a son. He named his son King of Rome. Napoleon had also made all the rulers of his kingdom either family members or good friends. This made him very secure. He wiped out most of the German states, which totally dissolved what was left of the Holy Roman Empire. By this time, he was the ruler of a huge empire. He had over 42 million people at his control.

### **The Defeat Of The Allies**

A short time after Napoleon's victory at the Battle of Austerlitz, Napoleon finally defeated both the Austrian and the Prussian forces. Austria was defeated at Wagram and began to withdraw from their territories in France. After that, Napoleon eliminated the Prussians after he had defeated them at the battle of Jena-Auerstadt. Then,

he annexed Prussia to his huge empire and stripped it of its dominions.

In 1807, Napoleon reached an agreement with the Russians after the Battle of Friedland which was a bloody but stalemate battle. However, Russia did not lose any of its territories and agreed to cooperate with Napoleon in the future. After a series of military victories, Bonaparte finally defeated the Holy Roman Empire that existed since 926 A.D.

### **Continental Blokade:**

*The War On Commerce*

*"Nothing is more difficult, and therefore more precious, than to be able to decide."* - Napoleon Bonaparte

By this time, Napoleon is getting closer and closer to his dream of world conquest. His last and unconquered foe was a nation due north of France -England. The reason why he couldn't conquer England is because he couldn't cross the English Channel which was being defended by the mighty English naval fleet that once defeated him at the Battle of Trafalgar in 1805. In desperation, Bonaparte set on to strike England both on commerce and economy, their two most susceptible spots.

The Continental Blockade prohibited trade to all parts of England and with that, Napoleon closed all trading ports of Europe to all English ships and forbade any commercial activity between any country and England. But Napoleon is making a big mistake because England, Russia, Spain and other European nations had resented to this system because they need goods and products from Britain. But in spite of all these decrees issued by Napoleon, Spain didn't stop trading with England because they badly need goods from there.

As soon as Napoleon heard about it, he and his troops marched to Madrid after calling Spanish soldiers 'puny' and then occupied Lisbon on December 1, 1807. Russia did not also like Napoleon's continental system. The continental system basically cut off trade with Britain. Most of Europe disliked the system because they needed goods from Britain. Everyone had found ways to work around the continental system, but Russia finally decided to abandon it. Napoleon found out about this and decided to invade Russia. Napoleon picked a bad time to invade. His forces in Spain were being driven out. Napoleon put together a huge army with soldiers from 20 different nations. This event would be the worst campaign Napoleon ever led...

### **The Russian Invasion:**

*Napoleon's Worst Campaign*

*'Courage is like love; it must have hope to nourish it.'* -Napoleon Bonaparte

### **Summary**

In June of 1812, Napoleon began his fatal Russian campaign, a landmark in the history of the destructive potential of warfare. Virtually all of continental Europe was

under his control, and the invasion of Russia was an attempt to force Czar Alexander I to submit once again to the terms of a treaty that Napoleon had imposed upon him four years earlier. Having gathered nearly half a million soldiers, from France as well as all of the vassal states of Europe, Napoleon entered Russia at the head of the largest army ever seen.

The Russians, under Marshal Kutuzov, could not realistically hope to defeat him in a direct confrontation. Instead, they began a defensive campaign of strategic retreat, devastating the land as they fell back and harassing the flanks of the French. As the summer wore on, Napoleon's massive supply lines were stretched ever thinner, and his force began to decline. By September, without having engaged in a single pitched battle, the French Army had been reduced by more than two thirds from fatigue, hunger, desertion, and raids by Russian forces.

Nonetheless, it was clear that unless the Russians engaged the French Army in a major battle, Moscow would be Napoleon's in a matter of weeks. The Czar insisted upon an engagement, and on September 7, with winter closing in and the French army only 70 miles (110 km) from the city, the two armies met at Borodino Field. By the end of the day, 108,000 men had died -but neither side had gained a decisive victory. Kutuzov realized that any further defense of the city would be senseless, and he withdrew his forces, prompting the citizens of Moscow to begin a massive and panicked exodus. When Napoleon's army arrived on September 14, they found a city depopulated and bereft of supplies, a meager comfort in the face of the oncoming winter. To make matters worse, fires broke out in the city that night, and by the next day, the French were lacking shelter as well.

After waiting in vain for Alexander to offer to negotiate, Napoleon ordered his troops to begin the march home. Because the route south was blocked by Kutuzov's forces (and the French were in no shape for a battle) the retreat retraced the long, devastated route of the invasion. Having waited until mid-October to depart, the exhausted French army soon found itself in the midst of winter -in fact, in the midst of an unusually early and especially cold winter.

Temperatures soon dropped well below freezing, cossacks attacked stragglers and isolated units, food was almost non-existent, and the march was five hundred miles. Ten thousand men survived. The campaign ensured Napoleon's downfall and Russia's status as a leading power in post-Napoleonic Europe. Yet even as Russia emerged more powerful than ever from the Napoleonic era, its internal tensions began to increase.

### **Beginning Of The March**

By the 23rd of June 1812, all the troops had taken their positions. Napoleon's main army was between Kovno and Pilviszki. Eugene's army was around Kalvaria. Jerome with his VII Corps was near Novrogod. Macdonald with X Corps was at Tilsit. Swarzenberg's Austrians were near Siedlice. All of these forces totaled up to 499,000

men, with 1146 guns. At the time, Russians had an army of 183,000 men and 15,000 Cossacks with 938 guns.

### **Kovno**

Napoleon's main army reached Kovno after crossing the river Niemen between June 24-25 1812. At the same time, Macdonald went over Niemen at Tilsit, eighty miles downstream. Jerome did not cross Neimen until the June 30th at Grodno. Napoleon established headquarters at Kovno and remained in that town for three days. Until Kovno, everything had gone according to the plans, but the following days were to reveal much tougher challenges in terms of climate and road quality. Lieutenant Mertens from Wuerttemberg, who was with III Corps gives this account:

'Until Ianovo (a town north of the Kovno-Vilna road), the heat was oppressive and the dust stifling. In the afternoon, the thunder would roll and we were drenched to the skin. On 28 June, the rains settled in and the first order of the day was to build some huts. Our exertions on this and the days following were the reason for the outbreaks of dysentery and influenza, which soon ran through the rank without let-up and thinned them more effectively than enemy shot. The rain held on through the 29th and left us in dire straits. On the 30th, we left our swamp-camp at the crack of dawn and on the 1st of July, many more men and horses fell victim to the mud. On the 3rd, the sun greeted us again, but the dysentery raged so badly that several hundred sick had to be brought to Maliaty, where a field hospital had been hastily established.'

### **Vilna**

The march from the banks of Niemen to Vilna was much tougher than expected. The weather was either too hot, or too rainy. The rain would turn the poor quality roads into muddy tracks that rendered the carriages impossible to move. Horses started to die in hundreds. Several bridges on the way could not deal with the load and gave way.

Each soldier carried his own four-day ration but unfortunately, these rations were all consumed during the first day due to lack of discipline. The road did not offer any source of nutrition for the starving soldiers in the march. The wells had been polluted by dead horses thrown in by the Russians. The cattle had a hard time keeping up with the army's march since the animals were not used to marching for 15 miles for 6 to seven hours.

The immense heat following the relentless rainstorms dried up the tracks but soon turned the muddy roads into clouds of dust which also hindered the army. Vilna was captured on June 28, 1812. Unfortunately, Vilna provided little for the army's needs. The Russians abandoning the town had destroyed Vilna's stores and houses. The rest of the stores were exhausted within the first day. Napoleon remained in Vilna far too long (28 June to 16 July).

## Vitebsk

*'It would be foolish to go any further. Here we must halt and regain our strength.'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

The trip from Vilna to Vitebsk claimed another 8000 horses and the cattle had a very hard time keeping up with the marching army. Several carriages were abandoned. Russians on the other hand did not seem to be suffering from the conditions. No dead horses, or abandoned carriages were found by the roadsides. Russians intended to leave nothing for the enemy so they had raid through the country destroying all the villages and all sources of resources. The peasants were just as afraid of the Russian army as they were of the French army.

All through this march, Napoleon seemed to make ambitious assumptions about the army's ability to march on without proper food and shelter. He kept on promising the soldiers that they would get a good rest at Vitebsk. Napoleon entered Vitebsk on July 29, 1812. There was still no indication of the Russian army that was constantly retreating deeper into Russian land. Conditions in Vitebsk were dire. There was a clear shortage of medical supplies and doctors and people with lost limbs dies first. Napoleon also seemed to show signs of psychological unbalance. He gave orders that were impossible to execute under the current conditions.

## Smolensk

*'I was maneuvering in a country which was as well disposed towards me as France itself; the population and authorities were on my side; I was able to obtain men, horses, provisions; and Smolensk is a fortified town'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

Smolensk is an ancient city built on high bluffs each side of the Dnieper. The city was encircled by high seventeen-century brick walls, thirty feet high and fifteen feet thick at the base. Russian army's divisions had retreated to Smolensk. Napoleon decided that he had to attack the city frontally from south to northward. This was due to the placement of the Russian Troops. To the east was Russian army under command of Bagration, to the North was Barclay with his troops.

On August 16, 1812, French troops under the command of Murat. Napoleon deployed his four corps around the entire south perimeter of the city. The main battle took place on August 17. Since the Russians were inside the city they had the advantage of using cannons on the approaching troops and soldiers were killed by the hundreds.

The battle died down with the dusk, by now the French had control over the southern suburbs of the city and the Russians still had control over the town. The Russian troops started a retreat eastward abandoning the city. The retreat of the Russian troops was received with delight by Napoleon while the news stirred controversy in Moscow's political circles. The Moscow crowd was shocked to hear that the Russian army had once again chosen to avoid further contact with the French army and had abandoned a holy city even after so many men had already died in the battle.

When the French troops entered the city, Smolensk was in ruins, streets were littered with dead and burnt bodies. Napoleon was so proud of his victory that he rushed a letter to Paris to inform his country of the victory. He dictated the following letter to Murat, his Minister of Foreign Affairs:

'I have this moment come in. The heat is intense, and there is a lot of dust, which we find rather drying. The enemy's whole army was here. It was under orders to fight, but dared not. We captured Smolensk without the loss of a man. It is a very big town, with walls and pretty fortifications. We killed three to four thousand of the enemy, wounded thrice as many, and found plenty of guns here. According to all accounts, a number of their divisional generals were killed. The Russian army is marching towards Moscow in a very discouraged and discontented state.'

Only the last sentence was somewhat accurate for Napoleon had lost 8-9,000 men during the Smolensk war and had overall lost 100,000 men since he had left Niemen.

### Viasma

*'Nothing is more dangerous to us than a prolonged war.'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

The French Army entered Viasma on August 28, 1812. Although the Napoleon's intentions were to save the town by rushing to get it, he was still too late. When the army arrived, the city was in flames. Although they found nothing in the city, Napoleon still wrote a letter to Paris, saying, 'I am in a rather handsome city. There are thirty churches, 15,000 inhabitants, and many shops with vodka and other useful objects for the soldiers.'

The reality was quite the contrary, the further they penetrated into the Russian land, they met more terrified were the local people and more devastation. Two days later Napoleon ordered the march to resume, and the French army set out on a trying journey to Gzatsk.

### Gzatsk

*'Not one sick soldier or straggler, not a single courier or convoy, was lost in this campaign from Mentz to Moscow.'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

As the Russians neared Borodino where they were to halt their retreat, the French kept chasing. Passing through Gzatsk the Russians absorbed reserves, totaling 15,589 men. The French army arrived in Gzatsk on September 1 1812. The town was quickly occupied.

The Russians had stripped the area of all the resources. There was meat but no salt, there was flour but no bread, and a general lack of water. The temperatures were around 90 degrees Fahrenheit. The French army that numbered 149,075 at Smolensk was down to 133,819. Napoleon and the French army remained in Gzatsk until September 4, 1812.

## Borodino

*'After a victory there are no enemies, only men.'* - Napoleon Bonaparte

*'There was not the least sense in it. Its immediate result for the Russians was, and was bound to be, that we were brought a step further towards the destruction of Moscow, and for the French that they were brought nearer the destruction of their whole army.'* - Tolstoy in War and Peace

Borodino lies seventy miles west of Moscow. The battlefield was open farmland from which the corn had just been harvested. There was a very dense forest behind the Russian forces, the Russian position was not very strong since the battlefield was flatland with no major obstacles. Napoleon however was not able to take advantage of the topography of the battlefield. The battle eventually turned into a 'trial of mutual slaughter that could have taken place anywhere.'

The armies took their positions on September 6, 1812. Napoleon's army consisted of 100,000 infantry, 28,000 cavalry and 590 guns. Russian army under the command of Kutuzov consisted of 72,000 regular infantry, 10,000 semi-trained militia, 17,000 cavalry, 7,000 Cossacks and 640 guns. The different approaches of the commanders of the two armies is clear in their proclamations:

Kutuzov's read: 'Trusting in God we shall either win or die. Napoleon is His enemy. He will desecrate His churches. Think of your wives and children, who rely on your protection. Think of your Emperor, who is watching you. Before the sun has set tomorrow, you will have written on this field the record of your faith and patriotism in the blood of your enemy.'

Napoleon's read: This is the battle you have so long desired! Now victory depends on you. We have need of it. Victory will give us abundance of supplies, good winter quarters and a prompt return to our motherland. Conduct yourselves as you did at Austerlitz, Friedland, Vitebsk and Smolensk. Let distant posterity say of each of you, 'He was present at the great battle beneath the walls of Moscow!'

The battle began on September 7, 1812 at 6 am. The war ended with Kutuzov's order to retreat at 3 am on September 8. Both sides had brutal losses. Russians lost around 44,000 men, the French lost at least 35,000 including fort-three generals. Russians did not consider themselves defeated, Kutuzov actually first decided to renew the battle the next day. Kutuzov actually remained behind during the Borodino war, and when he was told at the end of the day that they had lost their whole front-line, he refused to believe it.

'French attacks have been successfully repulsed everywhere, and tomorrow I shall put myself at the head of the army and drive the enemy from the sacred soil of Russia.'

Later on, Kutuzov accepted the inevitable conclusion that his men were too tired to face another attack and thus he gave orders for the retreat. Napoleon himself was not very sure that what he had was a victory or not, but the sight of the retreating army reassured him.



## Moscow

*'If Moscow had not been burnt, the Emperor Alexander would have been compelled to make peace.'*  
- Napoleon Bonaparte

*'We never suffered such losses. never had the army's morale been so damaged. I no longer found the soldiers' old gaiety. A gloomy silence has replaced the songs and amusing stories that previously had helped them forget the fatigues of the long marches. Even the officers appeared anxious, and they continued serving only from a sense of duty and honor. This depression, natural in a defeated army, was remarkable after a decisive action, after a victory which opened to us the gates of Moscow.'* - Colonel Fezensac on the state of the French army after Borodino

The Russians had withdrawn to Moscow unsure to do what next. Kutuzov did not want to hand over Moscow to the French without any sort of resistance. He thought this would be utmost disgraceful of him. A meeting was called and all commanders were present except for one who was in charge of the rearguard. The Russians had 70,000 men against Napoleon's 100,000. The council of war quite divided due to the shame and honor involved in the different possible tactics.

Kutuzov finally decided to call for a retreat. 'You are afraid of falling back through Moscow, but I consider it the only way of saving the army. Napoleon is a torrent, which we are as yet unable to stem. Moscow will be the sponge that will suck him dry.' - Russian Commander Kutuzov 1812

At the time, Moscow was quite a sizable city with a total inhabitant of 250,000. The city spread over large stretches of land with a mixture of palaces, rich homes, single storey cabins and huge bazaars. Moscow had six cathedrals and 1,500 churches, all of which were special due to their outlandish designs and unique architectural style. Although the denizens of Moscow were Francophile until 1812, and spoke French and watched French operas, they displayed a great sense of national pride in 1812 and left their homes. Only 25,000 people had remained by the French arrived at Moscow. Napoleon entered Moscow on September 14, 1812.

Although the army had strict orders against pillage, the men could not be controlled and they forced themselves into the palaces and rich houses. Some time after Napoleon's arrival in Moscow some fires started to show up in various locations in the city. At first these were thought to be accidents but when the fires started swallowing large parts of the city, it was obvious that the Russian army was setting fire to the city to avoid the French raiding on the riches.

The fires spread to such extent that Napoleon hardly escaped the torched city. The fire lasted from September 15-18. Four-fifths of the city burned down and the rest was saved by a sudden change of direction of wind and a following shower. Kremlin was saved since it stood above the city and the guards remaining in Kremlin extinguished threatening fires nearby.

Napoleon experienced probably the most frustrating moments of his campaign at this time when his prize was taken away from him. Now that the city had burned down, there was not much left behind for the hope of establishing peace

with Russia. The Russians had clearly indicated that they just did not want the French in the precious Russian land by going as far as destroying a large city.

Although Napoleon considered several quite far-fetched scenarios, he finally decided to go back to Paris. He first wanted to march to St. Petersburg, almost 350 miles away from Moscow. His generals told Napoleon that such a march was impossible due to the condition of the army after Smolensk and Borodino. There was the option of staying in Moscow until spring and then returning to Paris.

The problem with staying in Moscow was that the capital of Napoleon's empire would not hear from him for another six months and this absence of authority could have drastic results. Finally, Napoleon decided to march to Kaluga, a city to the south of Moscow. Napoleon left Moscow on October 19, 1812 with 87,500 infantry, 14,750 cavalry and 533 guns with a trail of some 40,000 carriages and wagons.

### **The War Of Liberation And The Fall And Abdication Of Napoleon**

*'A people which is able to say everything becomes able to do everything.'* -Napoleon Bonaparte

After the Russian incident, Napoleon's empire fell apart. England, Russia, Prussia, and Austria allied together to fight the French. On June 13, 1813, Czar Alexander I, the head of the Russians, joined the Prussians and thus, the War of Liberation started. Lucky for Napoleon, he defeated the Russian and Prussian armies in Lutzen and Bautzen. In a three-day battle at Leipzig, also known as the Battle of the Nations, the French were outnumbered in every way. The French had to retreat. Then on March 30, 1814 the allies captured Paris. Even Napoleon's generals realized it was a lost fight and gave up. Napoleon was forced to abdicate the throne on April 6, 1814. Napoleon was exiled from France. He took a few soldiers to his new 'empire' -the small island of Elba, a small island within sight of Corsica. He was allowed to keep his title of emperor and promised to pay two million francs every year to France.

### **The Escape And The Congress Of Vienna**

After Napoleon's Exile, European leaders quarreled upon the division of spoils of Napoleon's empire. The work of deciding the fate of Europe was done at the Congress of Vienna. The congress was hosted by Austria and presided over by Prince Klemens von Metternich, the guiding genius of the conference. Meanwhile, Napoleon has been in Elba for 10 months and in the midst of the squabbles of the quarreling Congress, he had escaped from the island set forth back to France.

### **The Campaign Of The Hundred Days And The Battle Of Waterloo**

Napoleon's return and preparations for war, 'I reign only through the fear I inspire.' On February 26, 1815 Napoleon Bonaparte, some generals and about a thousand soldiers of his personal guard boarded ship for their voyage from the island of Elba back to France. On this little island not very far from Corsica, the Emperor had

stayed since his abdication. Napoleon Bonaparte considered it was time for his return. He was ready to put everything on the line in one last, big gamble.

### **The Situation In France**

The French were very displeased with the political leadership of King Louis XVIII. Although the King meant well, he proved to be incompetent. In the King's wake, the 'émigrés' had returned to France: nobles and members of the clergy that had fled the country during the French revolution. Now they were back and they claimed, with a loud voice, their former privileges and the lands they owned before the revolution. The peasants who bought these lands for very low prices were of course very suspicious of a possible division of the lands amongst these 'émigrés'.

France was mainly an agrarian nation in those days and the mistrust of the largest part of the population undermined the King's position. The mediocre attempts of the Bourbons to revive the unstable economy had no effects. The situation was far from good; the prices of food were sky-high because of a hard winter and a dry and very hot summer. The middle-class, that did so well under Napoleon's rule, was complaining about the bad economic situation and the poor and the needy had to live through some very rough times. Another large group of malcontents was the ex-soldiers.

After their demobilization in 1814, many of these men were able to continue their normal civilian lives. For a sizeable group of veterans, officers on half pay and ex-professional soldiers there was no place in the with inflation stricken society. Once they were conquering heroes bringing glory to France, now many of them were starving to death, deserted by that same France. It's only logical that they were unhappy and agitated. On the international scene, everything looked favorable also. At the Vienna congress the understanding among the Powers was far from good and none of them really liked the French Bourbon government.

### **Napoleon's March To Paris**

On March 1, 1815, Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte sets again foot on French soil at Golfe-Juan, between Cannes and Antibes. A more appropriate place to land would have been the valley of the Rhine River. From there, the march to Paris would have been far easier and a lot faster. Bonaparte feared the royalist sentiments of the inhabitants of that region so he took the more difficult road through the Alps to Grenoble. His arrival took the French authorities by total surprise. It took four days for the news to reach Paris.

The irresolution of the local authorities gave Napoleon the time to act without interference. The population, on whose reaction everything depended, reacted with calm and resignation. On March 7, 1815, the small Imperial column met the 5th Regiment of the Line, not far from Grenoble. Napoleon stepped forward and faced the muskets alone. With a remarkable mixture of exaggerations and lies and by using his charisma and personal power over soldiers, he managed to persuade the

Regiment. With the cry: 'Vive L'Empereur' the 5th changed sides as one man. The gates of Grenoble opened and the Emperor received a warm welcome.

On March 8, the 7th Regiment of the Line and its commander, Napoleon's future Aide de Camps: Colonel Charles Huchet, Count de la Bédoyère changed sides too. On every stop on his march to Paris, Napoleon addressed the people. He promised everybody exactly what they wanted to have being the opportunist that he was. Peasants he assured that they would not lose their lands to the émigrés, city people he seduced with promises of fiscal reforms.

Everywhere he went he promised peace and prosperity. In the mean time, the Bourbons issued a warrant for his arrest. They send increasing numbers of troops to intercept him. Marshal Ney promised Louis XVIII he would bring Napoleon to Paris 'in an iron cage'. When he met his former master eye to eye on March 18, 1815 the attraction proved to be too great and he defected together with the 6.000 men in his command.

In Paris, a practical joker had put up a message on the Place Vendôme. It read: 'From Napoleon to Louis XVIII: my dear brother, it is not necessary to send me more troops, I already have enough of them!' Meanwhile, the mob became very restless. Revolutionary song's and slogans began to reappear. On March 19, 1815, Louis XVIII took the safe way out. Pressured by Napoleon's unstoppable march to Paris and the growing anti-royalist mood in Paris he ran in the middle of the night to Gent, Belgium (then still the Netherlands). Here he started a voluntary exile that would last for more than a hundred days.

### **The Emperor Back In Power**

Napoleon made his great entrance at the Tuilleries palace in Paris on March 20, 1815. Was his return this easy? No of course not: Napoleon knew that war was inevitable but he did not proclaim a general mobilization as off yet. It would only be a matter of time before his former enemies would turn on him but he desperately needed to get the French public opinion behind him so he pleaded for peace. He had hoped that at least some of the Powers would accept the fact that he was once again in charge in France, but that did not happen.

The representatives of the Powers met in Vienna on March 13; seven days before the Emperor reached Paris. They declared him an outlaw and an enemy of world peace. They pledged to assemble armies to take care of him for once and for all. On March 25, the Seventh Coalition was formed with the signing of a formal defense treaty between Britain, Austria, Prussia and Russia. While Britain and Prussia had already troops in the field, the other nations prepared themselves. All Powers broke of their official relations with Napoleon's France.

In France, Napoleon's position was a very weak one. He had to make lots of compromises to maintain himself. He nominated several members of the old nobility and even people that betrayed him in 1814 in high positions to get their much needed support. Off the about 730 députées in the chamber of representatives, only

about 100 were on his side. The others watched his every move with eagle's eyes. This of course, limited his freedom of actions a lot. In large parts of France, rebellion ruled. In the department of the Vendée, an armed uprising broke out.

### **Preparations For War**

Now that he could put the blame for the coming war on his enemies, Napoleon dropped his 'angel of peace' act. He ordered a general mobilization on April 8 but hesitated to reinstall the conscription. Louis XVIII had abolished this hated system when he came in power after Napoleon's first abdication. There were big shortages on every possible kind of military equipment but with a lot of tremendous efforts, most of them were, to some extent, resolved.

The biggest problem however was the shortage of soldiers. The Royal Army that Napoleon inherited after Louis XVIII fled for Gent was about 200,000 troops strong. Some 75,000 former soldiers and some 15,000 new volunteers responded to their Emperor's call to arms. Police, Customs and Navy units changed into infantry and artillery regiments. Veterans and the battalions of the National Guard 'Gardes Nationaux' entered active service.

With these units an auxiliary army of some 220,000 men was formed, an army that provided the garrisons for the 'places fortes' (fortresses) and the camps. These and other measures supplied Napoleon with a force of some 290,000 troops. He had a prospect of some 150,000 more troops within 6 months, the militia class of 1815. These conscripts, put on extended leave when the conscription was abolished, would be recalled into active service.

### **The Allied Plan Of Attack**

Despite his efforts, Napoleon's position was still far from favorable. In time, the Allies could send between 800,000 and 1,200,000 soldiers in the field against him. They could freely choose their directions of attack along France's long borders. The Allied commanders were very aware of this last advantage. Starting from April 1, their troops would march on Paris from different directions and in great strength. They hoped to crush the smaller French armies with their superior numbers. Wellington and Blucher with about 110,000 Anglo-Dutch troops and some 117,000 Prussians would attack France from the Netherlands (Belgium since 1830).

General Kleist von Nollendorf would join Blucher with his 20,000 Prussians, stationed in Luxembourg. Schwarzenberg and about 210,000 Austrians would attack from the Black Forest. An army of 50,000 Austrians and 25,000 Piedmonts under the command of General Frimont threatened Lyons and the Riviera and in Switzerland Bachmann and 37,000 Swiss were standing by. A Spanish-Portuguese army was still forming but would attack as soon as possible in the south and a Neapolitan army under Onasca would invade Southeast France.

Barclay de Tolly's 150,000 Russians, which had the longest distance to travel, would stay in reserve in the central Rhine area after their arrival. This was a pretty impressive set-up on paper but the implementation of it on the field did not go as

planned. Late May 1815 only the armies of Wellington and Blücher were in place. The Austrians could not reach the Rhine before early July and the Russians would reach their positions much later than planned.

### **Napoleon's Reaction**

Napoleon could adopt two strategies to counter the Allied attack. His first option was to take a defensive posture. Assuming that the Allies would not reach Paris before mid-August, he could use the extra time to recruit and train more combat troops. He would then be able to concentrate his forces around Paris and meet the advancing Allied armies with numerical superior forces.

But this strategy meant that large parts of France would be lost to the enemy with very little or no resistance at all. This would look very bad to the French people and Napoleon still very much needed to get the population behind him. His second option was to attack the Allied troops in the Netherlands with the forces he already had. The disadvantage of this strategy was that he could only bring about 125,000 troops in the field against more than 200,000 Allied troops commanded by the Coalition's best generals.

The possible advantages of a victory over these generals however were huge: An Allied defeat would make the Seventh Coalition shake on its foundations. The French would rally as one person behind Napoleon and this would give him the much-needed freedom of action. There was also a very real possibility of a pro-French revolt in the Netherlands once the Allied powers in those regions were defeated. This would give Napoleon an extra source of manpower: there were large numbers of seasoned veterans of the former Napoleonic armies in the Netherlands and lots of new recruits.

Wellington's defeat would probably provoke the fall of the British Tory government. With a new Whig government, it would be much easier to talk about peace. A French victory in the Netherlands would secure the north-north-east border so Napoleon would be able to wheel to the right and attack, reinforced by his observation Corps, the enemy at his eastern border. Napoleon chose the offensive strategy.

While he would attack in the Netherlands with the 'Armée du Nord', his observation Corps would guard the French borders. The 'Armée du Rhine' of General Jean Rapp (23,000 troops) was in position to stop the Austrians of Schwarzenberg once they started their advance. The 8,400 soldiers of General Lecourbe's 'Armée du Jura' faced Bachmann's 37,000 Swiss. Marshal Suchet's 23,500 strong 'Armée des Alpes' was ready to protect Lyons against the Austrian-Piedmonts army. Marshal Brune's 'Armée du Var' (5,500) observed the Neapolitan army of Onasco.

In the rebellious department of the Vendée, General Lamarque and his 10,000 troops were supposed to end the uprising or at least to keep it under control. Napoleon sent two armies in the field against the Spanish-Portuguese threat. The 'Armée des Pyrénées Orientales' (7,600) de Decaen at Toulouse and the 'Armée des

Pyrenees Occidentales' (6,800) de Clausel at Bordeaux. The minister of war, Marshal Davout disposed of 20,000 troops to protect Paris with. Early in June 1815 the first preliminary orders were given. Soon after this, the first, very concealed, troop movements to the 'Belgian' border commenced.

### **The French Advance Into Belgium**

When Napoleon decided to attack the Allied forces in Belgium, he set his General Staff to work. Napoleon selected the Beaumont-Philippeville region on the French-Belgian border as the assembly area for his Armée du Nord (Army of the North). In early June 1815, the only large unit of this Army already stationed in this area was the I Corps of General Drouet d'Erlon. The Imperial Guard was still in Paris and the rest of the French Army was scattered over France and in the midst of a reorganization. Under the utmost secrecy troop movements to the French-Belgian border had begun. Napoleon had embarked on his last campaign.

### **The Concentration Of The Army**

On June 7, very strict security measures took effect: all borders were closed, the mail was no longer delivered and no ships were allowed to leave French ports. The French started a huge misinformation campaign with its primary weapon being a flow of false rumors. One of these rumors was that the impending French attack would take place in the Lille region. Large units of the National Guard performed a series of maneuvers in this region to give credibility to this rumor.

The secret troop movements that started on June 6 were not an easy enterprise. Five Army corps, the Imperial Guard and the Cavalry Reserve moved from as far away as Paris, Metz, Lille, Valenciennes, Laon and Mezières. They assembled in an area with a frontage of 30 km and all of this without the enemy noticing it. Whenever an active unit left garrison to proceed to the assembly area, a National Guard unit (Gardes Nationaux) very discreetly took its place.

The concentration of the Armee du Nord was as good as finished when Napoleon arrived at his forward HQ at Beaumont on June 14. This concentration was a very fine military achievement and the French General Staff had every right to be proud of itself. Although this unnoticed concentration of troops gave the French Army a big advantage, there was still cause to worry because a number of its senior officers were not up to the task that lay ahead.

### **The French Commanding Officers**

The Chief of Staff, Marshal Soult, was a very fine general officer but had no experience in this very demanding function. Although he did his best he was responsible for some of Napoleon's problems in the days to come. The Emperor's choice of his highest troop commanders was also very peculiar to say the least. When Marshal Ney joined Napoleon on June 15, he was given command of the left wing of the Army.

Ney never had been very intelligent and always depended very much on his Staff. His courage on the battlefield, however was legendary. In 1815 he was no

longer capable of acting as an independent commander. The Prince of the Moskova never fully recovered of the battle fatigue he had suffered during the Russian campaign. The Emperor knew this but entrusted Ney with this important command. Following Napoleon's first abdication in 1814, Ney had been given a high-ranking position in the Royal Army of Louis XVIII; thus his appointment as commander of the Army's left wing would most certainly win the support of some Royalists. Grouchy, just promoted to Marshal, was given command of the right wing of the Army.

Grouchy was one of the finest cavalry generals in Europe at the moment but had little experience in commanding an infantry corps. Of course, Napoleon had little choice. Of the 26 Marshals of the Empire he had only 5 left in 1815. Amongst them were Davout and Suchet, two very fine officers. In stead of using them in the coming offensive he gave them other assignments. He sent Suchet to Lyon to protect to Piedmont border. Certainly an important task in 1815 but insubordinate to the invasion of Belgium. Suchet would have been a far better chief of staff than Soult. He left Davout, the Minister of War and Governor of Paris, in Paris because he wanted to have a strong man in the capital during his absence.

Napoleon therefore had robbed himself of the services of two of the finest Marshals of 1815. With Suchet as chief of staff, Soult and Davout could have been given command of the Army's wings, assignments for which they were eminently suited, and Grouchy could have been given command of the cavalry, the thing he did best. Napoleon probably had good reasons for his choice of commanding officers. The responsibility however for the things that went wrong during the following days lies with him and not with them as some parties implied after the defeat. These officers all performed to the best of their abilities during the campaign.

### **The French Plan**

Napoleon knew that it was impossible to achieve a total surprise, but he hoped that his forces would be able to attack and hold vital crossroads while the enemy was still concentrating his own forces. That is why speed was of the utmost importance. On June 15, at 0300, the Armée du Nord would advance in three columns. On the left flank General Reille's II Corps would start to advance in the direction of Thuin and Marchienne-au-pont. D'Erlon's I Corps would be right behind it. D'Erlon had orders to leave a cavalry brigade behind to observe the city of Mons and a division to guard the bridges at Thuin when they got there. In the center, the cavalry corps of Pajol -reinforced with Domon's cavalry -would advance from Beaumont to Charleroi at 0230. General Vandamme's III Corps would follow -under cover of Pajol's cavalry screen -with Lobau's VI Corps and the Guard right behind it. At 0530, Grouchy's cavalry would advance through fields and along small roads on Vandamme's right flank.

On the Army's right flank, General Gerard's division -protected by one of Milhaud's Cuirassier divisions -would start to march on Charleroi at 0300. Gerard's



orders also stated that he had to send reconnaissance detachments to Namur. Napoleon himself would join Vandamme's vanguard when the attack started. He would have the Marines and the Engineers of the Guard with him. The field trains of the Army had to follow Vandamme's Corps. The three leading corps had orders to send their own engineer units in front of their advancing corps to immediately clear all obstacles. Speed was of the essence! Napoleon ordered that the connection between the corps had to be maintained at all time and that they had to continuously send intelligence reports. If everything went according to the plan, the Army would be concentrated around Charleroi no later than the afternoon of the 15th.

### **The Allies**

Blücher and Wellington had only made vague mutual support agreements because they were persuaded that Napoleon wouldn't dare to launch an offensive against them. Wellington's Army was dispersed over a wide area. He counted on his cavalry screen and espionage network to warn him in time of possible French movements. It would not be before the afternoon of the 15th that he would fully understand what was going on and by then it was almost too late.

The Prussians under Blücher were more concentrated. Every corps was able to concentrate itself in less than 12 hours around his headquarters. General Zieten's corps was stationed along the border as a protective force but Zieten neglected to prepare the defense of the bridges over the Sambre river. His orders were to withdraw to Fleurus in case of a heavy French attack. If that would happen the other three corps would advance to Fleurus.

### **The Allied Reaction**

Blücher received the first intelligence reports on French activities only on June 14. Zieten's force had apprehended a French deserter in the night of June 12. This deserter informed them about the coming offensive but Zieten only forwarded this information to Blücher on the morning of the 14th. The number of rumors augmented and Bülow and Thielman were told to prepare their corps.

At 1500, General Dörnberg -the commander of a cavalry brigade -reported that the French were concentrating between Mabeuge and Philippeville and that Napoleon was probably present. Two more French deserters were captured in the night of June 14. These two claimed that the offensive would start the next morning. Blücher was asleep when this message arrived. Gneisenau, his chief of staff didn't want to wake him up and issued a number of orders on his own responsibility. He ordered Thielman to concentrate his corps around Namur, Pirch between Namur and Sombreffe and Zieten to cover these movements by delaying the French as much as possible. Bülow who was told to move to Hannut, thought that it was only a routine movement and decided not to move before June 16.

## The Attack

At 0230 on June 15, the first French troops left their bivouacs. There was a very precise timetable to avoid problems but even from this point on things were already going wrong. Vandamme had not received his orders because the officer who was carrying them had had a riding accident and never delivered the orders. It was 0700 before Vandamme received orders to advance.

In the meantime, Lobau's VI Corps which was behind Vandamme's III Corps, advanced on schedule which cause the two corps to become ensnarled. Napoleon ordered Gerard to cross the Sambre in Châtelet to avoid this 'traffic jam' but it didn't help much. The commanding officer of Gerard's leading division, General Bourmont deserted early in the morning of the 15th. His division, very demoralized by this betrayal of their general, delayed Gerard's advance considerably.

Reille's II Corps -the only one on schedule-destroyed a Prussian battalion at Thuin. However bad roads and the fierce resistance of a Prussian brigade at Marchienne-au-Pont delayed its further advance. Pajol reached Charleroi with his cavalry corps at about 0800 but couldn't take the bridges there without infantry support. His supporting infantry, the III Corps was still stuck in the 'traffic jam' with VI Corps.

Napoleon himself arrived there at 1100 with his Guard detachment. The Guard swiftly drove the Prussians out of Charleroi so Pajol could resume his advance to Gilly. Napoleon set up headquarters north of Charleroi and issued some orders. General Duhesme and some units of the Young Guard were to support Pajol and General Lefebvre-Desnoëttes had to lead the light cavalry of the Guard up the Brussels road. Reille, who had just captured Machienne-au-Pont was ordered to advance on Gosselies and to occupy this city.

## Zieten Retreats

Although he had received more than enough warning, Zieten was surprised by the French attack. He ordered a retreat to Fleures at 0430 and dispatched messengers to Blücher and Wellington. Blücher ordered Zieten to continue to observe the French and to retreat fighting to delay them. Zieten received this order a few minutes after 1100, at the exact moment that the Guard drove him out of Charleroi. He reported that he was under attack by 120,000 French but that he would try to hold Gosselies, Gilly and Fleurus. Blücher answered that Fleurus had to be held because the whole Prussian Army would be concentrating around Sombreffe.

Ney, who had just arrived and reported to Napoleon received command of the left wing on the spot. He received the verbal order to advance on the Charleroi-Brussels road with I and II Corps and the light cavalry of the Guard. It is not sure if Napoleon ordered him at this point to take Quatre-Bras. Grouchy received orders to advance to Sombreffe. In the meantime, 8,000 Prussians had stopped Pajol's advance at Gilly. Napoleon ordered Vandamme to attack them with a frontal assault and Pajol and Exelmans to attack their flanks. The Emperor then left to ride north and check on Ney's advance.

## **Ney Stands Before Quatre-Bras**

Gosselies fell into French hands at about 1600 when the Prussian garrison retreated to Fleurus. Ney and Lefebvre-Desnoëttes chased a small Allied unit out of Frasnes and followed it until about 2 km of Quatre-Bras. There they meet with elements of Perponcher's infantry division and some artillery.

Ney, who had 2,000 cavalry with him at the time did not attack because he thought that he was facing a far superior force. He therefore waited for the rest of his troops to straggle up. At 2000, Ney decided to take the prudent approach and issued orders to go into bivouac for the night. Meanwhile, Vandamme's attack on Gilly was going on in a very slow pace and without any progress at all. Napoleon rode over to Vandamme's location. As usual, his appearance on the scene helped the situation.

The Prussians pulled back and started a delaying action in the direction of Fleurus. Grouchy initiated a skillful cavalry pursuit that was stopped by Zieten's reserves. Vandamme refused to send his infantry to Grouchy's assistance because he didn't know at that time that Napoleon has issued a verbal order appointing Grouchy as commander of the French right wing. Because of Vandamme's refusal Zieten was able to hold Fleurus until 0500 on the 16th. By nightfall the French right wing also sets up bivouac for the night. At 2100 on the 15th, Napoleon rode back to his headquarters at Charleroi. Although many things went wrong during that first day, most of his troops are in bivouac in three compact columns near the initial objectives of the day.

## **Wellington's Reaction**

During all of June 14, nothing but unconfirmed messages reached the Duke of Wellington. Partly because of the lack of information coming from Blücher and partly because he was still under the assumption that the French were concentrating near Lille, Wellington concluded that they would attempt to cut his line of communication to the coast. He therefore issued his first orders.

He directed his forces to concentrate west and southwest of Brussels under the cover of a cavalry screen. The corps commanded by the Prince of Orange received the order to concentrate in the Enghien, Soignis, and Nivelles region. Lord Hill's corps is ordered to concentrate in the vicinity of the river Dender and Lord Uxbridge's cavalry is ordered to Ninove. The Army Reserve, stationed in Brussels is ordered to prepare to march. Wellington had made an agreement with Blücher well before the 15th that he would concentrate to the southeast of Brussels in case of a French attack.

With this concentration to the west-southwest, he actually increases the distance between his army and Blücher's; thus unwittingly assisting Napoleon to defeat them in detail. Luckily for Wellington, two Dutch-Belgian generals correctly assessed the situation. At about 1400 Constant-Rebecque, the Prince of Orange's chief of staff began concentrating Orange's corps around Quatre-Bras.

General Perponcher, one of Orange's division commanders decided that it would be much wiser to defend the strategically important crossroads at Quatre-Bras instead of concentrating near Nivelles as ordered by Wellington. With this act of insubordination he saved Wellington's reputation and Blücher's army because it prevented Ney from taking Quatre-Bras and marching on Blücher the next day.

It was only at about 1500 on June 15, when the French offensive was already going on for more than 9 hours that Wellington received word of the attacks on the Prussians outposts. At about 1800 his Prussian liaison officer, General Muffling informed him that the attack was not a diversion and that the Prussians were concentrating near Sombreffe. With this information in mind Wellington issued new orders.

Leaving a small portion of his army to protect his line of communication to Ostend, he orders the rest to concentrate around Nivelles thus shifting his disposition a little to the south. Rebecque's report that the French are threatening Quatre-Bras reaches Wellington at the Ball of the Duchess of Richmond in Brussels. At about 0100 on the 16th, the Duke ordered his officers to very discreetly join their troops and start concentrating them at Quatre-Bras.

### **Conclusion**

In the early hours of June 15, it was already clear that some French commanders were not up to their task. Stupid mistakes were made and the lack of initiative of some of them was great. Lucky for the French none of the Allied commanders had even thought of blowing up or of heavily defending the bridges over the river Sambre. If they had, the situation would have been very different.

When the sun went under on June 15, the French were where they wanted to be that day and the Allies were getting into position. The two batties that would be fought on the next day, 16 June would be of the utmost importance for the rest of the campaign. But on the eve of June 15, 1815, that was still in the future.

### **The Battle Of Quatre-Bras**

Despite the delays of the previous day, Napoleon found himself in an excellent position on the morning of 16 June 1815. He faced Blucher at Ligny with a more than large enough force and Marshall Ney faced a small Allied force at Quatre-Bras with far superior numbers. Napoleon could have won the campaign that day; however, several things went wrong, as you will find out for yourself here.

### **The Ground**

The battle was fought around the crossroads of Quatre-Bras, a small hamlet with only four houses. This crossroads marked the junction between the Charleroi-Brussels Road and the Nivelles-Namur Road. To the southwest of the junction was the Bossu wood. South of the wood were the farms Petit-and Grand-Pierrepoint. South of the crossroads the ground fell away to the Gemioncourt farm, which lay next to a small stream in the valley. The ground then rose again to the south.

Southeast of Quatre-Bras, on the Namur Road, was the hamlet of Paradis (also called Thyle of which it was a part). Southwest of that was the hamlet of Piraumont and further south, the Hutte wood. North of Quatre-Bras the ground dropped into a reverse slope.

### **The Forces**

On the morning of the 16th, Marshall Ney deployed several units of Reille's II Corps and the Guard Light Cavalry Division, commanded by Lefebvre-Desnoëttes. D'Erlon's I Corps would join him later. Ney was informed that Kellerman's III Reserve Cavalry Corps would be sent to replace the Guard Light Cavalry, which had received orders to join the Imperial Guard in the vicinity of Fleurus. The only Allied force at Quatre-Bras on the morning of the 16th was Perponcher's 2nd Dutch-Belgian Infantry Division, which belonged to the Prince of Orange's I Army Corps.

Perponcher, a former commander under Napoleon and close to the scene of action, immediately realized the strategic importance of the crossroads at Quatre Bras and ordered his division there instead of to Nivelles, as ordered by Wellington. (See chapter two) Perponcher's presence at Quatre-Bras undoubtedly saved the day for the Allies. His decisiveness coupled with Ney's indecisiveness caused Napoleon's plan to go awry. Perponcher deployed as follows: four units to the right of Quatre-Bras, two on the Charleroi-Brussels Road at Gemioncourt to block that road, and three in reserve near the crossroads. Light troops occupied Piraumont and the Pierrepont farm. Orange hoped that the woods and the fields full of tall rye and corn would conceal the weakness of his force.

### **The Preliminaries**

At about midnight 15/16 June, Napoleon and Ney met at the Imperial headquarters at Charleroi. Following a long discussion with the Emperor, Ney rode back to his headquarters. Early in the morning of the 16th, at about 0600, Napoleon had Soult dispatch orders to Ney and Grouchy, his wing commanders. Grouchy was ordered to advance in the direction of Sombreffe and Gembloux and engage the Prussians he might find there. Later he was to send part of his force to the assistance of Ney should this be necessary.

Ney was ordered to occupy the Quatre-Bras area and had to hold himself ready for an immediate advance up the Brussels road once the reserve reached him. This order arrived well before 1100 but it was not until 1400 that Ney took any action to occupy the area. It is unbelievable but it seems that he even neglected to warn II Corps (Reille) to prepare for an early morning advance.

In addition, he neglected to order I Corps (d'Erlon) to move closer to II Corps after returning from his late meeting with Napoleon. Some authorities say that Reille, a veteran of the Peninsular War, advised Ney to be cautious. Reille, who knew British tactics, feared that the Allied strength would lie concealed in the woods, the cornfields and the reverse slope to the north.

Other authorities say that Ney was no longer capable of such an important

command and that he no longer knew what he was doing. Whatever the case, he waited for new troops to arrive until, finally, at 1400, he felt he had sufficient strength to force the crossroads. He had wasted 6 precious hours.

During the entire morning, Ney had a 6 to 1 numerical advantage over Perponcher and Orange. A decisive French attack then would have made the day but it never materialized. At 1400, Napoleon instructed Soult to send a message to Ney, informing him that he (Napoleon) would attack Blucher at 1430.

Ney was to vigorously attack any enemy in front of him, drive him back, then turn, and attack Blucher's right flank. However, if Napoleon should defeat the Prussians first, he would turn to attack the left flank of the enemy facing Ney. At 1515, Soult sent another message to Ney telling him that 'the fate of France is in your hands' and that he was to attack the Prussians on the Brye heights and in St-Amands without any delay.

### **The Battle**

At about 1400, Bachelu's division advanced to attack the Piraumont farm and Foy advanced in the center, supported by Piré's lancers. The attack began very slowly and very cautiously because of Reille's fear of running into strong, concealed Allied forces. Before 1500, Gemioncourt and Piraumont were in French hands. In the Bossu wood and at Piérrepoint farm the Dutch-Belgians offered a stiff resistance but had to fall back under the French pressure. They managed, however, to hold the wood. Perponcher's line was about to crack under the combined attacks of three French divisions when, at about 1500, the first of much needed reinforcements, Picton's division and Merlen's Dutch-Belgian cavalry, arrived. Wellington arrived at about the same time, immediately took command and deployed Picton and Merlen on the left flank. Shortly after 1500, the French formed a line between Piérrepoint through Gemioncourt to Piraumont.

A cavalry counterattack at 1530, led by the Prince of Orange, was driven back with heavy casualties. At about this time the Duke of Brunswick and his Brunswick contingent arrived to reinforce the Allies. At 1600, Ney received Napoleon's order, which had been dispatched at 1400, to vigorously attack the enemy in front and come to his assistance at Ligny. Up until this moment, Ney had not appreciated the importance of capturing the crossroads. He sent an aide to I Corps (d'Erlon) to hasten its advance and launched II Corps (Reille) again in a renewed attack. The newly arrived division of Jérôme Bonaparte was to clear the Bossu wood and the eastern outskirts.

Foy would attack Quatre-Bras and Bachelu would assault up the Namur road. D'Erlon's I Corps, however, was by this time marching away from, not toward, Quatre-Bras. D'Erlon, who was proceeding northward on the Brussels Road from Gossillies, was overtaken near Frasnés by a staff officer who, according to d'Erlon, had written orders for d'Erlon to take his corps to Napoleon's assistance at Ligny. There are several versions of this meeting between I Corps and the unknown staff

officer (see further down in this text): although d'Erlon insisted there was a written order from the Emperor to change his direction of march, such a document, if it existed, has never been found. Napoleon said that he knew nothing about such an order. Some authorities assume that a well-meaning staff officer who knew Napoleon's plan saw d'Erlon's unemployed corps and took it upon himself to redirect it to Ligny.

Some authorities also propose that this same officer may have scribbled the 'Imperial order' himself, which would explain why d'Erlon had seen a written order that the Emperor claimed had never been written. When Ney learned that his much-needed I Corps was marching away, he lost his temper. A few minutes later, Colonel Forbin-Janson, an Imperial aid, arrived with Napoleon's 1515 message. The colonel told him to attack Quatre-Bras at once. The furious Marshall took out his anger on the poor colonel, who was so shocked by this undeserved treatment that he forgot to hand over the written message. Therefore, it wasn't until later that evening, when it was too late, that Ney would receive the message that would have made things clear to him earlier in the day. Meanwhile, at about 1615 at Quatre-Bras, the French, supported by Piré's light cavalry, advanced almost to the crossroads. The British 42nd, 44th and 92nd regiments held their ground despite heavy casualties and repelled the French advance.

Then Piré's lancers charged the British infantry and severely mauled the 42nd and 44th regiments before they were driven off. Jérôme Bonaparte was more successful. Many of Perponcher's men were driven out of the Bossu wood and the Brunswick contingent, sent to assist Perponcher, was routed during their advance south from Quatre-Bras. At about this moment a British brigade under Halket, a Hanoverian brigade under Kielmansegge and the Nassau contingent arrived and were immediately deployed to support the hard-pressed Allied line.

With these new troops, Wellington now had a numerical advantage. Kellerman, who had arrived with only his forward brigade, received the order to charge Wellington's center to 'overthrow the mass of the Allied infantry.' Kellerman was astounded. A cavalry charge without infantry support against formed enemy infantry was suicide and would certainly lead to the destruction of his brigade. He asked Ney to confirm the order. Ney replied by saying 'Go, but go then!' Infuriated by this insane order, Kellerman charged with his cuirassiers and against all odds succeeded. They decimated the 69th Regiment, routed the 33rd Regiment and found themselves in possession of the crossroads.

However, without infantry support and being fired upon by a concealed battery at almost point-blank range and two British regiments, Kellerman had to give up his hard-won prize and return to the French lines. During the retreat, Kellerman's horse was killed and he barely escaped capture by clinging onto the bits of two cuirassier's horses. By this time, Jérôme had cleared the Bossu wood and already had skirmishers west of Quatre-Bras, but after the arrival of Cooke's British 1st Infantry Division of the Guard, which suffered heavy losses at Quatre-Bras, Wellington coun-

terattacked. Jérôme's advance was stopped and the French were driven from the Bossu wood. The Allies re-took Gemioncourt and, before the fighting ended at 2100, drove the French all the way back to their starting positions. The battle resulted in a stalemate.

### **D'Erlon's I Corps**

D'Erlon's Corps was probably the key to victory. This corps, which could have sealed the fate of the Allies at Quatre-Bras or the Prussians at Ligny, was wasted by marching and countermarching all day between the two battles and contributing to neither. This is what supposedly happened: At 1515, Soult sent a message to Ney telling him that the fate of France was in his hands and that he was to attack the Prussians on the Brye heights and in St-Amands without delay.

At about the same time that the 1515 message left Imperial headquarters, Napoleon received word that Ney had engaged an Allied force of 20,000 at Quatre-Bras and; therefore, had his own battle to fight. Realizing that Ney could not join him, Napoleon, according to some sources, scribbled a note to Ney telling him to send only d'Erlon's I Corps. Some historians assert that the aide-de-camp who delivered the note was never definitely identified but most name General Count de la Bédoyère.

This Imperial aide-de-camp gave the order directly to d'Erlon's leading division as he was passing through the corps on his way to Marshal Ney. Other historians claimed that Napoleon knew nothing of this note. Their version of the incident is as follows: while riding to deliver an order from the Emperor to Ney, de la Bédoyère discovered I Corps marching toward Quatre-Bras. Knowing the Emperor's battle plan and that d'Erlon's corps was needed at Ligny, he hastily wrote the note in the Emperor's name.

Since the document did not survive the action this cannot be verified. Ney was furious when he saw one of his corps marching away from the battle and sent an order for it to turn around immediately and join him. At approximately 1830, d'Erlon turned his corps around again to march back it to Quatre-Bras. However, he detached Jacquinet's cavalry and Durutte's infantry divisions to continue marching to Napoleon's assistance at Ligny. He warned them 'to act with great prudence' which they did because they never arrived in time. He also failed to notify the Emperor of this detachment. D'Erlon, with the rest of his corps, finally arrived at Quatre-Bras at 2100, after the battle had ended. It had taken d'Erlon approximately two and one-half hours to cover the 3.2-km (2-mile) distance to Quatre-Bras!

### **Casualties**

French loses were approximately 4,300 killed and wounded. Allied loses were approximately 4,800 killed and wounded, including the Duke of Brunswick, who died at the head of his troops.



## **Conclusion**

The campaign could have ended on 16 June. If only Ney had been more active on the morning of the 16th and d'Erlons corps had made a contribution to either battle, the events of the next two days would have been very different. I Corps would have made a difference at either battlefield. At Ligny, an envelopment of the Prussians with d'Erlons Corps would probably have meant the destruction of the greatest part of the Prussian Army. Instead, a good portion of the Prussian Army engaged at Ligny escaped destruction. At Quatre-Bras, a victory and a skillful pursuit would have sent the Allies running to Brussels instead of giving them the chance to reform themselves at Mont-St-Jean.

## **The Battle Of Ligny**

During the French advance on 14-15 June, Blücher had ordered his army to close on Sombreffe. He arrived himself at Sombreffe on the afternoon of June 15 and decided to make a stand there. Napoleon realized this on the morning of June 16 and while Marshal Ney engaged Wellington's force at Quatre-Bras, Napoleon engaged Blücher at Ligny in order to drive him away from Wellington. By nightfall the French held the field at Ligny, but a big portion of the Prussian army had escaped destruction. These troops would seal the fate of the Emperor.

## **The Ground**

The battle was fought along the line of the Ligne and grand Ry brooks on which the Prussian position was based. It was a long position stretching from Wagnelée in the west over Saint-Amand, Ligny and Sombreffe to the hamlet of Balâtre in the east. The ground in this valley was marshy and the Ligne brook, although not very wide, was steep-banked. At Balâtre the brook was about 4 m wide. The highest point in the terrain, the Bussy mill where Blücher's observation post was located 162 m high. There were ten more hamlets along the brooks and four bridges.

## **The Forces**

Blücher had three of his army corps with a total of about 84,000 men and 224 cannons. All his forces were deployed along the Ligne brook on a forward slope, allowing the French to fire upon them which, of course, is what they did, with heavy casualties as a result. The Prussian position was a strong one. They occupied all the hamlets and the four bridges. The walled gardens, stone houses and farmhouses made a series of strongholds connected to each other by hedges, orchards and stone walls. However, the Prussian right flank was dangerously exposed and the left flank overextended. Ziethen's I Corps was deployed on the right of the Prussian line, Pirch's II Corps in the center and Thieleman's III Corps on the left flank.

Napoleon had about 68,000 men and 210 cannons of III Corps, IV Corps, I, II and IV Reserve Cavalry Corps and the Imperial Guard with him. III Corps was deployed on the left of the French line, facing Saint-Amand, and IV Corps before

Ligny, while the cavalry corps observed the enemy's left flank. The Guard and IV Cavalry Corps stayed in reserve at Fleurus.

### **The Preliminaries**

During a reconnaissance at about 1100, Napoleon realized that the Prussians would make a stand at Ligny so he immediately ordered to make the necessary preparations to fight them. His plan was to envelop Blücher's right flank with Ney's troops while he would penetrate the Prussian center to trap and destroy at least one-half to two-thirds of the Prussian army. The Emperor wrote to Ney at 1400 to inform him that he would attack the Prussians at 1430 and that Ney was to attack vigorously any force before him, then turn, and attack Blücher's flank.

### **The Battle**

The initial French attack began between 1430 and 1500 on June 16. Vandamme's III Corps, supported by a division of II Corps under General Girard, attacked Saint-Amand. General Gérard attacked Ligny with two divisions of his Corps. As this attack began, Napoleon still expected Ney to arrive in the Prussian right flank. He wrote him at 1515 telling him to advance on Blücher immediately. Ney had his own battle to fight and would not come. Gérard's first frontal attack against Ligny failed.

Other, better supported attacks were more successful and the French captured the eastern part of the village several times but were pushed back by the Prussians every time. The open terrain before Saint-Amand was a disadvantage for Vandamme and his divisions took heavy casualties. Here too, the village changed hands several times but eventually, by 1700, Vandamme managed to capture and hold Saint-Amand. Despite these heavy losses, the Emperor's plan was working. Blücher had to send in almost all his reserves and battalion after battalion was slaughtered by the French guns as they counterattacked Vandamme's divisions. The Prussians were becoming more and more shaken and disorganized and Napoleon saw how they were massing on their right flank. A breakthrough at Ligny would trap at least half the Prussian army so he ordered the Guard to prepare to attack.

While the preparations for this attack were made an unidentified but apparently hostile force was reported marching on the French left flank. It was 1800. The Emperor expected Ney but this couldn't be him because this force was marching on his flank, not the Prussian right flank as Ney was supposed to do. He hastily sent the Young Guard and Subervie's cavalry division to support Vandamme's corps, and aides to identify the mysterious arriving force.

This gave Blücher some time to reform his line. His men were tired and his line was overstretched but with a determined counterattack he managed to push back Vandamme's wavering troops. Zieten broke into Saint-Amand and Thielman launched a cavalry charge down the Sombreffe-Fleurus road. The Young Guard and elements of the Old Guard quickly intervened and restored the situation at Saint-Amand and Grouchy's cavalry smashed the Prussian cavalry attack. At about 1830

the strange column was identified as d'Erlon's I Corps. To the Emperor's surprise and anger it began to countermarch back to the west. Realizing that he would get no more help from Ney, Napoleon decided to inflict maximum damage to the Prussians with the Guard.

While a sudden thunderstorm concealed the Guard's preparations, the French artillery opened up on Ligny. At about 1900 Napoleon led his Guard in to the attack. They attacked Ligny in two columns of double companies, backed up by Milhaud's cavalry squadrons and about 60 guns while Gérard's infantry attacked between the Guard columns. The Prussian line was shattered under the impact of the assault by the Grenadiers and Chasseurs of the Guard. The line wavered, recoiled and finally broke.

A cavalry counterattack with 32 squadrons of Röder's cavalry, led by 'Alte Vorwärts -Old Forwards' Blücher himself, broke on the Guard's squares and did nothing more than buy a little time for the infantry to escape. Blücher's horse was shot from under him during this attack and the old marshal (he was 72) lay trapped under his horse. The French cuirassiers, who were everywhere, rode over him at least twice without recognizing him. An adjutant from his staff finally helped him from the field at nightfall.

By nightfall, at about 2100, the French held the field and the Prussians were withdrawing in various states of disorder. The Prussian rear guard fought minor skirmishes around Brye and Sombreffe until 2400, as they tried to win as much time as possible for the rest of the army. Because of the state of the terrain it was impossible for the French to effectively pursue the Prussians with cavalry so Napoleon contented himself with attempting to maintain contact.

### **Casualties**

Prussians casualties were 16,000 killed and wounded, 600 captured, and 21 cannons. In addition, some 9,000 to 12,000 soldiers deserted in the next days. French casualties were 11,500 killed and wounded.

### **Conclusion**

Although the French were victorious, their victory was not complete because a good portion of the Prussian army escaped destruction. Things would have been different if Ney, or even only d'Erlon's Corps, would have arrived on the Prussian right flank. This would probably have meant the destruction of the Prussian I and II Corps, thus about half of Blücher's army. With his forces so much reduced, Blücher would not have been able to march on Waterloo on 18 June and Napoleon would have won that battle and thus the campaign too. Although Napoleon had missed the chance to win the campaign that day, his situation was satisfactory. The French had managed to keep the Allies from joining forces and Blücher was beaten, at least for now. Napoleon still had two fresh Corps (I and VI Corps) that he could use against Wellington so the chances for success were still very real that 16th day of June, 1815.

## The Battle Of Waterloo

On the morning of June 18, 1815, Napoleon's French Army of the North faced the Duke of Wellington's Anglo-Allied forces and later also Blücher's Prussian forces in the vicinity of a small Belgian place called Mont-St-Jean. Here a last, great battle would be fought, the one that ended the Napoleonic era: the battle of Waterloo.

### The Ground

The Waterloo battlefield was very small in area even for the standards of those days. The opposing armies occupied two ridges separated by a gentle valley. In the center of the battlefield running from south to north was the Charleroi-Brussels road. Following the line of the Mont-St-Jean crest was the Ohain road: a narrow road running between high banks. East of the Brussels road was the Wavre road, a sunken road some 5 to 7 feet (1.5 to 2 meters) deep with thick hedges alongside making it a natural trench. See the map for more details on the ground.

Napoleon had approximately 74,000 troops and 256 guns. The left flank of his first line was formed by the 3 divisions of Reille's II Corps covered by Piré's cavalry. Four divisions of d'Erlon's I Corps formed the right flank with Jacquinet's cavalry on the extreme right flank. In the second line stood the French cavalry; Kellerman's Cuirassier and Guyot's Heavy Cavalry of the Guard behind II Corps and Milhaud's Cuirassier and the Light Cavalry of the Guard under Lefebvre-Desnoëttes behind I Corps. Behind this mass of infantry and cavalry stood Lobau's VI Corps and the cavalry divisions of Domon and Subervie in reserve. In the rear, near the hamlet of Le Caillou, stood the final reserve: the Imperial Guard.

### The Allies

Wellington had about 68,000 men and 156 guns. His position was carefully examined by the Duke during a reconnaissance the year before and was a strong one. From Smohain and Papelotte on the left through La-Haie-Sainte and Hougomont it stretched to Braine-L'Alleud on the right. Wellington had massed the bulk of his army on his right flank leaving the left flank lightly held. This clearly shows that he expected Blücher to show up to reinforce the Allied left flank. As was his usual custom the 'Iron Duke' drew up most of his troops to the north of the Ohain road on the reverse slope, out of sight and protected against the fire of the French artillery. Only one brigade was fully exposed.

The village of Braine-L'Alleud on the right flank was held by General Chassé's division while units of Lord Hill's II Corps occupied the rest of the Allied right flank. Five brigades of the Prince of Orange's I Corps occupied the center of the Allied line. The left flank was occupied by the Saxe-Weimar troops under Prince Bernard of Saxe-Weimar and the cavalry brigades of Vivian and Vandeleur.

To the south of the Ohain road the Allies occupied some strong points, designed to break the momentum of the French attacks. On the right flank a con-

tingent of Nassauers and Hanoverians occupied the Chateau de Goumont (usually called Hougomont). In the center of the Allied line, just next to the Brussels road, the King's German Legion occupied the La-Haie-Sainte farm. A little further on the east side of the Brussels road was the sandpit, occupied by a detachment of the 95th Regiment.

A little further to the east stood Bylandt's brigade. It is not determined if they stood there by error or deliberately but unlike the rest of the Allied troops they were left in full view of the French gunners. On the Allied left flank Papelotte, Frichermont and La Haie were occupied by the Saxe-Weimar troops.

### **The Prussians**

In time Blücher would arrive on the field with three corps, being some 70,000 men.

### **The Approximate Positions**

On 17 June 1815, Napoleon had two choices: to follow Blücher or to turn against Wellington. His biggest problem was the lack of information. The direction of the Prussian retreat was unclear because the roads were filled with deserters and stragglers so it was almost impossible to follow the tracks of the formed Prussian units. Napoleon knew almost nothing about the situation around Quatre-Bras since Ney didn't send any detailed reports. The Emperor ordered Ney to occupy Quatre-Bras without delay.

If Ney was unable to do so he had to inform the Emperor immediately. Napoleon would then come to his aid. Information from cavalry reconnaissance gradually accumulated and Napoleon learned that Wellington was still at Quatre-Bras. A message from Ney confirmed this. Convinced that Blücher could not reorganize his army any sooner than in three days and that he had him on the run, Napoleon ordered Grouchy with an army of about 30,000 men (III and IV Corps, I and II Reserve Cavalry Corps) to pursue the Prussians. Grouchy's orders were to detect and prohibit any Prussian attempt to join Wellington and cover Napoleon's right flank. Grouchy marched a little before noon on 17 June in the direction of Gembloux.

Battered by heavy rains, he did not put great speed in his march. Wellington only learned of Blücher's defeat at Ligny at about 0730 on the 17th. He immediately ordered to prepare to retreat. At 0900 a Prussian officer reported to Wellington that Blücher would concentrate around Wavre and that he wanted to know Wellington's intentions. Wellington told him that he would withdraw to Mont-St-Jean and that if he could be certain of the support of at least two Prussians corps he would do battle there, otherwise he would retreat to Brussels.

The Allied withdrawal began at about 1000. Wellington, still fearing for his right flank, posted about one fifth of his force at Hal and then forgot about it for the remainder of the next days. Ney did not hinder the Allies during their with-

drawal, ignoring Napoleon's orders to occupy Quatre-Bras. When Napoleon arrived at Quatre-Bras, it became apparent that only Uxbridge's cavalry still occupied the area. Napoleon, furious by this new mischance, charged forward with all the cavalry and horse artillery he could find in order to get to Wellington's retreating infantry.

The rest of the Army of the North followed at a much slower pace. Uxbridge tried to make a stand at Genappe but was soon outflanked and forced to retreat. During the entire pursuit a wild thunderstorm raged over the area, saturating the soil. Napoleon's vanguard approached Mont-St-Jean at about 1830, they saw considerable numbers of Allied troops on the plateau before them.

To determine if he had Wellington's army before him or only a rear guard Napoleon sent forward some horse artillery and deployed Milhaud's cuirassier. They were received by the fire of at least sixty guns. Napoleon was convinced now and set out to make a thorough reconnaissance of the enemy position. It was still raining and would not stop before 0600 the next morning. Grouchy reached Gembloux at about 1900 and halted for the night. At 2000 he reported to Napoleon that the Prussians had split into two columns, one moving to Wavre, the other one probably to Liège.

He would follow the major Prussian force to Wavre and cut it off if it attempted to join Wellington. Napoleon inspected his entire outpost at 0100 after a short nap and then returned to his headquarters at le Caillou. Here he found Grouchy's message that strengthened his misconception that the Prussians were out of action for some time to come. He was convinced that Grouchy knew his orders and would effectively keep the Prussians from joining Wellington. The water-saturated soil would make the effective use of artillery impossible, so at 0500 Napoleon set the hour of attack at 0900 in order to let the ground dry out a bit.

Meanwhile Blücher and his chief of staff, Gneisenau, planned on seizing the initiative from Napoleon. They would send their undefeated IV Corps under their best corps commander, General Bülow to St-Lambert. Bülow marched at 0400. His orders were to hold his corps under cover at St-Lambert if Wellington was not engaged at the time. If he was engaged Bülow was to attack Napoleon's right flank. Pirch's corps would follow him and Zieten and Thielmann were told to get their corps ready.

At 0900, the hour Napoleon wanted to start his attack, some of the French units were still not in place and the ground was still too soft to use the artillery. Napoleon was confident, he believed he was slightly outnumbered (he did not know that one-fifth of Wellington's army was sitting useless at Hal) but the morale of his troops was good. He figured he had a 90% chance of winning the battle and postponed the attack to 1300. That proved to be a fatal mistake since it allowed the Prussians to arrive on the battlefield in time. According to a local farmer named Decoster who was serving as a guide for Napoleon, the Emperor was impressed by the sight of the Allied troops but told him that he would cut them to pieces some time later.

At about 1000 Napoleon received a message from Grouchy which stated that the marshal was marching on Wavre and that most of the Prussians seemed to be attempting to join Wellington by way of Brussels. Napoleon ordered the 7th Hussar Regiment to reconnoiter in the direction of Grouchy in order to establish contact. Napoleon's plan of attack was simple because he needed a fast, complete victory. He wanted to annihilate Wellington's forces with straightforward frontal blows. At 1300 he would give overall command to Marshal Ney. Reille would launch a diversionary attack on Goumont in order to attract some Allied reserves from the center. A great battery of some 80 guns was formed in front of d'Erlons I Corps. This battery would lay down a heavy artillery bombardment on the Allied center and left to soften the defenses. D'Erlon then would attack towards Mont-St-Jean.

### **The Battle**

At about 1130 Reille's artillery reinforced with Kellerman's horse artillery opened up on Goumont. The purpose of the coming attack on Goumont was diversionary but Napoleon's brother Prince Jérôme obviously felt differently about it. He was determined to capture Goumont no matter at what cost. He led a brigade of his division in the woods surrounding the Chateau and cleared them by 1230. Jérôme then tried to charge the high walls of the Chateau and was repulsed. He then committed a second brigade. Some French under the command of Lieutenant Legros managed to break through the north gate but were wiped out. Wellington send in some reinforcements.

At some time the whole of Jérôme's division and a brigade of Foy's division were committed to this hopeless battle that should only have been a diversion. Around 1300 Ney requested permission to launch the main attack. At that time Napoleon's attention was drawn to a large body of troops massing in the St-Lambert area (direction Bois the Paris on the map). Jacquinet's hussars brought back some Prussian prisoners and an intercepted message from Bülow to Wellington revealing to Napoleon that Bülow was at St-Lambert and the other Prussian corps at Wavre.

Napoleon now needed to make a quick decision since he now had the Allied army and a Prussian corps before him. The French army was deployed but not committed and could withdraw without a problem but if he did that he would find himself badly outnumbered by the combined Prussian-Allied armies later. He figured he still had a 60% chance of winning the battle so he choose the bolder course of action. He sent Lobau's VI Corps and Domon's and Subervie's cavalry to cover his right flank against the Prussians and a message to Grouchy ordering him to join him immediately. This message was already too late as you will understand later.

At Walhain, at about 1130, Grouchy heard the sound of the guns at Waterloo. General Gérard urged him to march to the sound of the guns but Grouchy refused, saying he had his orders to pursue the Prussians. Gérard then requested permission to march with only his corps to the Emperor but Grouchy refused that too. He told

Gérard that it would be a bad decision to split up his forces. At about 1300 the Grand Battery opened fire. After about 30 minutes of heavy artillery fire, the French main attack started. The Allied infantry, except for Bylandt's exposed brigade had suffered practically no casualties from the bombardment since hardly a soldier was visible and the softness of the ground prevented ricochet fire.

For some unclear reason, three of the four divisions of d'Erlons corps advanced in the outdated and massive 'Colonnes de bataillons par division' instead of the more appropriate 'Colonnes de Division par Bataillon.' This formation meant that each division advanced on a deployed battalion frontage with about 200 men in the front rank and about 24 to 27 ranks deep making a formidable target for the Allied troops. Only one French divisional commander, General Durutte had the good sense to use the right formation. As you will read later, his division had the greatest degree of success.

As if this tactical blunder was not enough, only one cavalry brigade under Travers was sent to accompany the Infantry. Yet it was the custom in those days to precede infantry attacks with cavalry attacks to force the enemy to go into square formations. Decimated by Allied artillery, d'Erlons divisions continued forward. The French infantry captured the sandpit, Papelotte and the enclosures around La-Haie-Sainte but could not break into the main buildings. Bylandt's brigade ran away.

One of Ompteda's KGL (Kings German Legion) battalions sent by Wellington to reinforce La-Haie-Sainte was cut to pieces by Traver's cuirassiers. Had enough cavalry been allotted to this attack, Wellington's line of defense could have very well been broken in this initial attack. At that time Picton's division counterattacked. The French wavered under the British volleys, short-range artillery fire and devastating bayonet charges. In the furious fight that ensued, General Picton was killed. He was still wearing his civilian clothes since his luggage had not arrived in time.

Lord Uxbridge seized this moment and ordered his British cavalry to advance. The cavalry brigades of Somerset and Ponsonby charged down on the French. Somerset's Household Brigade routed Traver's cuirassiers, then plunged into the mass of the French infantry while Ponsonby's Union Brigade charged on Marcognet's columns. Completely surprised, the French panicked and ran after a fierce struggle, losing some 3,000 men, the eagles of the 45th and 105th Regiments and two companies of horse artillery. Overexcited by this success, Ponsonby's brigade continued and charged the Grand Battery in the valley. Although they reached the guns and killed many artillerymen their charge was doomed. Napoleon sent in one of Milhaud's cuirassier brigades and Jacquinet's lancers to counterattack.

Ponsonby was killed and his brigade was cut to pieces by this counterattack, some 1,000 officers and troopers of the Union Brigade were killed and the brigade ceased to exist as a unit. Somerset's brigade, which had pursued Traver's cuirassiers for a while, escaped with lighter casualties. The only French division that steadily



advanced was Durutte's division until the defeat of the other French divisions forced him to retreat too. Though attacked by Vandeleur's cavalry he withdrew in good order. D'Erlons shaken corps had taken a beating and would not be reformed and ready to fight again before 1600. Wellington used the time won by his heavy cavalry to reinforce La-Haie-Sainte, reoccupy the sandpit and bring up a reserve brigade into the line. On the left flank Prince Bernhardt retook Papelotte.

Meanwhile the pointless fighting at Goumont continued. Napoleon ordered to use howitzers against the Chateau. These howitzers soon set the place on fire but it's defenders still held out. At 1530 Napoleon decided that the Allied center must be smashed. He ordered Ney to take La-Haie-Sainte no matter at what cost. Ney again occupied the grounds but can not break through to the buildings. By 1600 the artillery duel reached a climax, the more numerous French guns gained the upper hand and pounded the Allied center. Wellington ordered his line to retreat behind the crest of the plateau.

He summoned units from his right and left to rebuild his battered center. Long columns of wounded soldiers started marching toward Brussels. Ney, seeing these movements through the thick curtain of smoke that must have been over the battlefield by then, concluded that Wellington was retreating. He orders Milhaud's cuirassier corps forward. For some unknown reason the Light Cavalry Division of the Guard, under Lefebvre-Desnoëttes, followed. Ney sent this cavalry against the least damaged part of the Allied line, the right center, but without infantry or artillery support.

Again 'le rougard' makes another grave tactical error. Without infantry and artillery support a cavalry charge cannot succeed, even worse, by choosing this direction of attack Ney forces the Grand Battery to cease their supporting fire.

Fired upon by the British artillery until the last possible moment, hindered by the soft, wet ground and the passage over the sunken Ohain road, at 1600 about 5,000 sabres charged up the plateau to find the Allied infantry formed in 20 squares. Without enough room and speed, the momentum of the charge was broken. The horsemen swept around the squares, trying to penetrate them. Uxbridge's cavalry counter attacked and sent the French back down the slope. The cuirassier and Guard cavalry rallied and renewed their charge several times.

Napoleon was furious when he saw Ney's premature action but knowing that the attack must be supported, ordered Kellerman and Guyot to join the charge. At 1700, the whole French cavalry was committed, some 10,000 sabres in all. The British claimed that no squares were broken but it seems that some of them were severely cut up. After perhaps as much as twelve unsuccessful charges the remainder of the French cavalry retired, badly shaken up. The British Colonel Frazer said the following about the charge of the French cavalry: 'Never did cavalry behave so nobly, or was received by infantry so firmly.'

Except for the two brigades on the left flank, Wellington's cavalry was used up

and most of his artillery was in a bad shape. The French had not spiked the guns or destroyed the rammers and sponge-staves when they had them in their possession but many gunners simply disappeared! At that time Ney remembered that he still has Bachelu's division and a brigade from Foy's division and he threw them unsupported against the Allied line. This attack fails under heavy fire and within in ten minutes 1,500 men are killed or wounded. Meanwhile, Lobau managed to keep Bülow from emerging from the bois de Paris with a bold series of attacks, but the Prussians with their superior numbers fought their way to Plancenoit.

At 1730 Napoleon ordered Ney again to take La-Haie-Sainte. The French had worked up close to the buildings by now and two Allied battalions sent to reinforce the farm were caught by cuirassiers. Uxbridge managed to extricate one, but only after it suffered heavy losses. The other battalion was destroyed. Ney, heavily supported by artillery and some cavalry, took personal command of an infantry regiment and a company of engineers and captured La-Haie-Sainte at 1800 in a furious assault. The survivors of the Kings German Legion that had occupied the farm had to run for their lives.

Ney then brought up artillery against the crumbling Allied center and called on Napoleon for reinforcements. Napoleon answered something like; 'troops, were do you want me to find them, do you want me to make some?' This was perhaps the moment of truth and had Napoleon sent in the Imperial Guard at this time the battle could have been won. Nevertheless Napoleon had good reasons for refusing Ney's request. The Prussians had at last reached Plancenoit and their cannonballs started to reach his reserves on the Brussels-Charleroi road.

The Emperor ordered General Dushesme to recapture Plancenoit with the Young Guard. Bülow counterattacked, was repulsed and counterattacked again. Dushesme was mortally wounded and the Young Guard was thrown out of Plancenoit. Napoleon then turned to his faithful Old Guard. Generals Morand and Pelet with two battalions of grenadiers and chasseurs of the Old Guard were sent in with the bayonet. Two Guard battalions pitted against fourteen Prussian battalions, but in only 20 minutes the Guard cleaned out Plancenoit, leaving some 3,000 Prussian casualties. Lobau also had successfully counter attacked in the meantime and the Young Guard occupied Plancenoit again.

Meanwhile Ney pressed his attack on Wellington's left and center but he saw his chances of victory diminish with the minute. The presence of some cuirassiers forced the Allied infantry regiments to stay in squares while short range musket fire of French skirmishers and French guns at point blank range severely damaged them. The Allied infantry took a heavy beating. The remainder of the Allied cavalry tried to do what they could but they too were a spent force. Some cavalry regiments refused to charge and some even ran away. In the midst of this inferno Wellington rode along his line, urging his troops to fight back. Reinforcements were coming from the right wing and the Prussians kept coming so all was not lost yet.

With Bülow repulsed Napoleon turned back to his original plan. Wellington's forces were so shattered that one decisive blow could finish them off. The Prussian reinforcements were very slow to arrive and the sound of guns coming from the general direction of Wavre told Napoleon that Grouchy had engaged the Prussians too.

Napoleon still had 9 battalions of his Old and Middle Guard in reserve. At 1900 the Guard was ordered forward. Napoleon himself marched at the head of the Guard with Generals Friant and Drouot before giving command to Ney some 600 yards before the enemy lines. By this time troops were appearing in the northeast. These were of course the Prussians but Napoleon had it circulated that they were Grouchy's troops. The French troops were excited and all shouted: 'Vive l'Empereur, en avant!' But this lasted only for a moment since it soon became apparent that the arriving troops were Prussian. The morale of the French evaporated and they hesitated.

Now all hope was with the Guard as they marched forward on the sounds of the 'Pas de charge.' But Wellington was ready, his center was reinforced and his troops were awaiting the French from concealed positions like the bank of the Ohain road. Instead of taking the relative short route directly into Wellington's battered center, Ney led the Guard northwest along the same track he had previously led the cavalry. This way the Allied troops at Goumont were able to enfilade them during their advance. After leaving two battalions to face Goumont Ney led the other seven (some sources say four, five, six or eight) battalions in a single column to the enemy. Soon the column split in two.

Whether this was deliberate or by accident is not known; however, a column of grenadiers moved directly toward the position of the British Guard, leaving La-Haie-Sainte on their right while the chasseur column moved parallel on the left side of the grenadiers. The French attack near La-Haie-Sainte was halted by musket fire from General Chassé's division. Further west, the grenadiers were suddenly fired upon by Maitland's British Guards, who rose from behind their protective bank of the Ohain road. Surprised by this sudden apparition, the grenadiers stopped. The British poured volley after volley into the ranks of the Imperial Guard. The grenadiers hesitated, then turned and retreated. It was more than even they could withstand.

No more than ten minutes later, the chasseur column was attacked by Adam's light brigade that had concealed itself in high standing corn and suddenly appeared on the chasseur's flank. The chasseurs stopped and turned to face this enemy. Wellington then ordered all troops in the vicinity to charge with the bayonet. The French were unable to form and after a bloody fight they retreated too. The Imperial Guard's retreat around 2010 staggered the French line. The cry 'La Garde recule, sauve qui peut' spread through the French ranks. Zieten's arriving Prussians had driven a wedge between Lobau and Durutte and Bülow renewed his attacks on

Plancenoit. Wellington waved his hat, thereby ordering his whole line forward.

Four (some say three) uncommitted Guard battalions formed squares just south of La-Haie-Sainte and the two reserve Guard battalions did the same thing at La-Belle-Alliance. Although these battalions were able to hold off the advancing Allied and Prussian cavalry, they gradually disintegrated under the constant pressure of fugitives seeking refuge in them and the continuing Allied attacks.

Legend says that General Cambronne shouted 'merde' in the spirit of the Guard dies but never surrenders to the British when they asked him to surrender. The battalions of the Young Guard still at Plancenoit retreated in good order as did the two remaining squares at La Belle Alliance. Napoleon remained in one of them for some time but then he rode ahead to Genappe. Covered by the remainder of the Guard, fragments of other commands retreated towards Genappe. Wellington and Blücher met at La-Belle-Alliance at about 2100. The pursuit of the French was left to the 'fresh' Prussian cavalry while the Allied army remained on the battlefield for the night. Although Gneisenau himself took command of the pursuit, all contact with the routed French was lost by daybreak.

The Battle of Waterloo was over; Napoleon had fought his last battle. Blücher wanted to call it the battle of La-Belle-Alliance but Wellington won the discussion: he called it the battle of Waterloo because that sounded more English and his headquarters was at Waterloo during the battle.

### **Casualties**

Anglo-Dutch casualties were approximately 15,000 killed and wounded and several thousand more missing. About 7,000 Prussians killed or wounded. The French lost about 26,000 killed and wounded 9,000 missing, and 9,000 prisoners.

### **Conclusion**

Why did Napoleon lose this battle? Many mistakes were made, not only by the Emperor himself but also by his subordinates. The first mistake made was the postponement of the attack until 1300. This gave the Prussians the time to arrive on the battlefield in time. As you read before the effect of the artillery during the initial attack was minimal, anyway so he shouldn't have waited for the ground to dry. Napoleon made a second mistake by giving overall command of the attack to Ney. As commander-in-chief, nobody expected Napoleon to lead the assault himself but leaving such an important attack at the discretion of the unreliable Marshal Ney, after all the errors he made in the previous three days, was at least very unwise and most certainly dangerous. Although Ney really was 'the bravest of the bravest', he was incapable of leading this big a battle. He fought like a grenadier, not like a Marshal of France.

As stated above, Ney was among other things responsible for spending the French cavalry in a series of unsupported, pointless attacks and in a way for dimin-

ishing the chances for success of the Imperial Guard by leading them in a wrong direction. Another big mistake was allowing Jérôme to escalate the diversionary attack on Goumont into a major struggle that kept large parts of II Corps occupied when they were urgently needed Elsewhere. Jérôme himself should have known better.

Another costly mistake was the adaption of an inappropriate formation by three of the four divisions in d'Erlons initial attack. If they had used a better formation, as Durutte had, there would have been far less casualties and a much greater chance for success.

Grouchy can be criticized for not marching to the sound of the guns or for not using some more initiative like you would expect from a Marshal of France. He was under orders to follow the Prussians and to keep them from joining Wellington. He followed them all right but he didn't keep them from joining the Anglo-Dutch as we all know.

Soult's staff work was far from good and he too is responsible for some of the things that went wrong. But the responsibility for this disaster was with the Emperor himself. He was probably already very sick by then and there were some undeniable signs of deterioration in his overall ability. He had become arrogant and overconfident in his own abilities. The Napoleon of before 1815 would not have lost this battle. He underestimated his opponents and appointed second rate commanders when better men like Davout and Suchet were available. His greatest mistake was his lack of personal control over the battle. He was at Waterloo, but he wasn't worth 40,000 men anymore.

Tribute must go to Wellington, Blücher, and their soldiers. The Anglo-Dutch army was nothing more then a collection of multilingual units, many of them militia and depot units that never saw action before, yet they have beaten a formidable opponent. Blücher's loyalty and the staying power of his soldiers after Ligny saved Wellington's army since without them the Anglo-Dutch would have been beaten.

### **The Battle Of Wavre**

In the afternoon of 18 June 1815, while Napoleon Bonaparte was fighting his last battle on the fields of Waterloo, Marshal Grouchy fought Thielmann's Prussian army corps near the village of Wavre. The day after victory was his, but it meant nothing anymore since his master, the Emperor of the French, was defeated at Waterloo.

French casualties were about 2,600 killed and wounded. The Prussians lost about 2,500 killed and wounded. Grouchy was under orders to pursue the Prussians. This is exactly what he did, but with little success. He was not ordered to come to Waterloo before 1900 on 18 June when he couldn't come anymore. Therefore, in my opinion, he cannot be called a traitor as many (mostly French) people called him after the campaign of the hundred days.

It is however true that he acted with little initiative or speed, unbecoming of a

Marshal of France, and that he failed in executing his orders: preventing the Prussians from joining Wellington. As we all know, it was the arrival of the Prussians on the Waterloo battlefield that sealed Napoleon's fate.

### **Final Chapters Of Napoleon's Life**

In the evening of June 18, 1815, the shattered remains of the French army that had fought the battle of Waterloo were retreating under cover of the cavalry of the Imperial Guard. This day was the end for Napoleon but all was not lost for France, the Allies had won a battle but still not the war. The soldiers were ready to fight on, but as you will read further along these lines, the politicians decided otherwise.

### **The Retreat**

During their meeting at La Belle Alliance on 18 June 1815, Wellington and Blücher decided that the Prussian cavalry would pursue the French. The Prussian chief of staff, Gneisenau, would take command of this pursuit. The exhausted allied troops would remain on the battlefield for the night. The Prussian II Corps under General Pirch would march in the direction of Mansart around midnight to cut of Grouchy's line of retreat. General Bülow received orders to march on Genappe.

After taking refuge in the last square of the Guard for some time, Napoleon and some of his officers fled to Genappes where he found his coach. He was almost captured by the Prussians when his coach got stuck in the mass of fleeing French soldiers. The Prussian Major von Keller managed to 'capture' Napoleon's hat, coat and sword but the Emperor escaped. The Prussian cavalry pursuit lost more and more of its momentum as the night progressed and eventually Gneisenau halted just south of Frasnes. The Prussians had captured about 8,000 French. On the morning of June 19, Marshal Grouchy was still unaware of Napoleon's defeat at Waterloo. At about 1030 Grouchy received word of the Emperor's defeat. After some confusing moments General Vandamme proposed to march on Brussels to free the prisoners, cut of the enemy's line of communication and then regain France via Valenciennes. Sault's messenger, however, had brought orders for Grouchy to retreat to the river Sambre. Grouchy decided to do so by way of Namur, Dinant and Givet. In order to do so the Namur bridges had to be captured as fast as possible.

At 1130, Grouchy ordered General Exelmans to advance with his cavalry to Namur to take the bridges over the Sambre. The rest of Grouchy's command would follow at once, covered by a rear guard composed of Pajol's cavalry and Teste's infantry division. This retreat was unhindered by General Thielmann's Prussians, many of whom had been routed after Grouchy's victory at Wavre. But General Pirch II Corps was on it's way to cut of Grouchy's line of retreat. He arrived at Mellery at about 1100 on June 19 but his troops were so exhausted that he had to let them rest. He spent the rest of the day there.

Two regiments of French Dragoons captured the Namur bridges at about

1600. At about 1900 the rest of Exelmans' cavalry passed through the city of Namur while Grouchy and IV Corps (General Gérard) were only about 10 km behind. Vandamme's III Corps reached Gembloux around 2100.

On June 20, Pirch's Prussians overtook the French and began to appear everywhere but where repulsed. Pirch then attacked again while the French withdrew through Namur but Teste's rear guard was able to hold off the Prussians at the cost of 1,500 Prussian casualties. Blücher then recalled Pirch, Thielmann, and the Prussian pursuit of Grouchy's right wing ended. Late on 21 June 1815, Grouchy's undefeated troops entered Phillipeville. He had managed to escape destruction or capture with about 28,000 men, most of his troops wounded; all his artillery and most of his equipment were damaged.

### **The Second Abdication**

Napoleon reached Phillipeville on 19 June at 0900. There he ordered the remains of his army to concentrate at Laon. Around 1300 Napoleon left Phillipeville in Soult's coach. After a short halt at Laon, he reached Paris on 21 June. The Chambers took a very hostile posture against him. Caulaincourt and Joseph advised capitulation. Davout, Carnot and Napoleon's brother Lucien, advised Napoleon to dissolve the Chambers and to seize power. But the Emperor was tired and physically exhausted and while he rested, the Chambers decreed that any attempt to dissolve them would be treason.

Napoleon now could only seize power by force. It would be easy since Napoleon still had about 30,000 reliable troops in Paris and he had the loyalty of the Paris lower classes too. On his command the Chambers would have been annihilated but Napoleon did not want to 'have Paris run with blood.' On June 22, he abdicated in favor of his son, the king of Rome. A provisional government under Fouché took over power.

### **The Military Situation Of France**

The military situation was not hopeless: Marshal Grouchy, appointed as commander in chief of the 'Armée du Nord' had already assembled some 28,000 men at Laon by June 24 and this force soon swelled to about 55,000. The northern and eastern borders were solidly defended by a series of 'Places fortes -strongholds'. The combined Allied and Prussian armies had only just crossed the French border. Marshal Suchet had attacked and beaten Frimont's Piedmontese in the southeast.

Lamarque had ended the uprising in the Vendée. There were still about 170,000 replacements available in French Army Depots. However, the news of Napoleon's abdication broke the moral of many French soldiers and caused many desertions. Schwarzenberg, with 210,000 Austrians, crossed the Rhine on 23-26 June. General Rapp, outnumbered and without orders, soundly defeated the advance guard under Württemberg, then withdrew to a position near Strassbourg.

Several border fortresses came under siege and effective irregular warfare flared everywhere along the eastern borders. The crippled British army, too, were advancing in the direction of Paris, by way of Péronne and Montdidier, and were two days march behind the Prussians. Grouchy was able to slow down the Prussian advance and on 29 June the Army of the North entered Paris. On June 30, the Prussians assaulted Paris' northern defenses. Blücher was repulsed and began to circle around Paris with the intention to attack it from the less fortified south. Davout knew his every move of course since Blücher had to operate in hostile country.

Davout now had superior numbers than either Allied army so he could be confident of victory. However, he saw no purpose in it and was probably disgusted by the maze of intrigues the politicians had trapped him in so, as minister of war, he decided that the only sensible thing to do was to recall King Louis XVIII. He loosed Exelmans' cavalry on the Prussians to moderate their advance. Blücher halted and Wellington called Louis XVIII back to Paris.

On July 4, an armistice was signed. The French promised to withdraw their army over the river Loire. Davout had hoped to be able to maintain the army but Louis XVIII, under pressure from the allies, disbanded it. France was occupied and plundered. The return of the King and the disbanding of the French army opened the door for the so-called 'White Terror'. This was an explosion of reactionary fear and hate, fanned by the Allies. Marshal Ney was shot for treason after an unfair trial, Marshal Soult vanished, General Vandamme left for America, Marshal Brune was killed by a mob and Murat, the former king of Naples, was executed after a failed attempt to recapture his former kingdom.

### **Napoleon Goes Into Exile**

On June 22, 1815, Napoleon had abdicated in favor of his son. He retired in Malmaison where he was like a semi-prisoner of the provisional government. After some consideration (he first thought about retiring in England), he asked the provisional government to supply him with a frigate to sail to America where he wanted to seek asylum. Fouché stalled this demand because he knew that

Napoleon would make a great bargaining chip in the negotiations with the Allies. He even contrived to warn the British that Napoleon would try to escape by sea from Rochefort. Napoleon repeated his demands for a frigate because he knew that he was in considerable danger. Blücher wanted to hang him as soon as he was able to capture him and he would most certainly face life long imprisonment if captured by the British. With the enemy at the gates of Paris, Napoleon offered his services as a general to the government with the promise to leave French soil for America as soon as he had driven out the enemy. Fouché ignored this offer. Napoleon left for Rochefort. He could have very easily regained the army and took over Paris if he wanted to at this moment but he chose not to break his pledge to the government.

He reached Rochefort on 3 July and found the frigate waiting. But he was



trapped: a British squadron guarded the harbor and the winds were contrary. Several plans of escape were offered to Napoleon; for example, boarding a fast American vessel, but Napoleon rejected them all because he found them unworthy for the Emperor of the French.

On July 10, 1815, Napoleon started negotiations with the Admiral Maitland, commander of the British squadron at Rochefort. During the night of July 14-15, orders issued by Louis XVIII for Napoleon's arrest reached Rochefort. The city authorities warned Napoleon and at sunrise on June 15 he boarded a British warship, *Bellerophon*, and surrendered himself to the British. He was then again exiled, but this time to St. Helena, a remote island in the south Atlantic. He lived there for five years until he died at he age of 51 on May 6, 1821 from stomach cancer.

## **Napoleon Bonaparte Historical**

### *In Juan-les-Pin*

(Antibes) every year there's a reinactment of Napoleon's landing from Elba in 1815 for the start of his march up the Route Napoleon. The small army of participants dress and act the roles to perfection, bivouacing on the beach during the few days of activities.

1799 -Napoleon Bonaparte, returning from Egypt, via Fréjus, seized power in a coup d'état on '18 Brumaire' day (by the new French calendar). He created a new army, using able-bodied Frenchmen rather than the upperclass and nobility. He began his bid for power, eventually controlling most of western Europe (except Britain and Portugal).

1812 -Napoleon was bogged down in snows of the Russian winter.

1814, April -Defeated by an overwhelming force of Austrian, English, Prussian and Swedish troops, Napoleon was exiled to Elba, embarking at Fréjus.

1815 -Napoleon escaped from Elba and set out on the Route Napoléon to recover the world he had lost.

1815 (18 June) -He fought his final battle at Waterloo, against Arthur Wellesley, the first Duke of Wellington, and was exiled to Saint Helena off the coast of Africa.

1821 -Napoleon died in exile, but is remembered for his glories.

## JOAN OF ARC IN HISTORY

JOAN OF ARC was born in 1412 in the village of Domremy in North Eastern France. Her parents were peasants, and Joan never attended school. Like all children of the working classes in those days, she helped with chores from an early age. She was deeply religious and spent hours praying in the church.

From a young age she claimed to hear the voices of St Michael (the Archangel) and two saints, St. Catherine and St. Margaret. When Joan was born, England and France had been at war for about 100 years. The details of the war are extremely confusing, but the relevant part is that they were, at that time, fighting over who should be King of France.

The English had won lands in North Western France. Henry V was King of England and Charles VI was King of France. All French Kings were crowned in Reims, a city in the Northern part of France controlled by the English. After the English won the land they signed a treaty with France. The agreement was that Charles could remain King of France, but that when he died, Henry would rule. Unfortunately Charles and Henry both died within a very short time of each other. Charles had a son, (also named Charles, later known as Charles VII). Henry also had a son (later known as Henry VI) whom the English claimed should be King of France due to the agreement between the two countries. When his father died, Charles, at that time known as the Dauphin, quickly claimed the throne for himself. The French people refused to accept that he was King until he had been crowned in Reims. The English were determined that would never happen, and started trying to take even more French land. The Duke of Burgundy, a French Duke, was helping the English. He wanted to eventually take the crown for himself, or at least gain more land. With no King in charge, the French were losing and it looked fairly certain that they would eventually control all of France.

Into this stepped Joan. The voices, which until then had given her only general guidance, began telling her she must save France from the English. She was instructed to go to the leader of the French Army, telling him she could lead France to victory and have Charles crowned. She was seventeen years old at the time.

With the help of a local baron, she found her way to Charles. She managed to persuade him that she truly heard voices, and that God would help her get him crowned. Although it is unclear why Charles believed her, legend has it she told him things that only he could have known. Charles was convinced that Joan and the voices were genuine, and he agreed to give her a small army. He also gave her a suit of white armour and a sword. The English had recently captured Orleans, a city about

80 miles from Paris. This is where Joan started her mission. She led her small army against the English, and was wounded. Her men, seeing her bravery and determination to fight on, were inspired. They retook the city of Orleans for France. Joan became known as the maid of Orleans. The French rallied behind Joan and supported her. With their help she won several more battles. The English were losing ground quickly, and Reims once again belonged to the French.

Charles could now be crowned King of France. Joan and her Army escorted him to the cathedral in Reims, where he was crowned, in July 1429. Once he was crowned Charles decided that he ought to negotiate with the English and the Duke of Burgundy. Joan and her voices, however, had different ideas. She was determined to fight on and rid France of the English forever.

Joan continued to fight but began to lose battles. She was captured by the troops of the Duke of Burgundy in 1430, at the Battle of Compeigne. The Duke sold her to the English. The English could not admit that a teenage girl had beaten them in battle. They needed to prove that she had used trickery, sorcery and witchcraft to do it. She was imprisoned in a dungeon and tortured. The English wanted her to admit that she had lied about the voices. They also wanted her to agree to remove the men's clothing, which they said was against the Churches ruling. Joan refused and remained in prison.

Charles no longer had any interest in Joan, she had given him what he wanted, the French crown. Now she was just a nuisance and an obstacle to him negotiating with the English. He made no attempt to rescue her or buy her back from the English. Joan remained in prison, growing weaker and more tired daily.

She finally agreed to remove the soldiers clothing and signed a statement that she had been wrong. In return she was supposed to be allowed to visit the church. The English had lied. Remember that she could neither read nor write. She probably had no idea what it was that she was admitting to. She again insisted that the voices had been real, and put her soldiers clothing back on. They now had the proof they needed to have her tried and convicted of heresy and witchcraft. She was tried, convicted and sentenced to death. Because she was found guilty of being a witch, she was to be executed by fire. She was 19 years old.

On May 30, 1431 she was burned at the stake. Charles did nothing to save her, and neither did the French people, who only shortly before had claimed she was a heroine. After her death Charles decided that it wasn't a good idea for people to believe she had been a witch or heretic. That would mean that he had been wrongly crowned. He set about having her name cleared.

Thirty years after her death the Pope claimed she had been wrongly accused and that she was not guilty of any crime against the Church or God. She was eventually canonized in 1920, becoming St Joan. The church never stated whether or not her visions and the voices she heard were real. She was made a Saint because she was convinced that God had ordered her to do what she did, and she followed those orders. Her absolute faith in God and obedience of what she believed were His instructions are what made her a saint.

## **The Life Of Joan Of Arc**

Having been overlooked for three centuries, Joan of Arc reappeared after the revolution to occupy, from the 19th century until the Vichy regime, a central place in political and ideological debates. The cult of Joan of Arc is an extraordinary myth, based around a revolutionary 'Child of the people', saviour of the monarchy and of the divine order, patriot betrayed by the church's elite.

Across all that, the history of French nationalism up to the 19th century has written itself. The annexation of Alsace-Lorraine by Germany, the fatherland threatened from abroad and the bombing of the cathedral at Reims by the Kaiser's troops in 1914-1918 allowed public and religious powers to re-launch the cult of Joan of Arc.

In 1940-1944, London then Berlin, as well as Vichy, used Joan of Arc to support their propaganda. More recently during the Falklands wars, an Argentine visitor was upset at not having Joan of Arc in his country. But only the historical facts are important. Thanks to Quicherat, who was the first to study the texts about her life, we can offer you a summary of her life which only really began when she was 13 and she heard the voices for the first time, and which ended when she was 19 on the stake. These days, many young girls continue to die at 19 in order to be free or simply for their self-respect. Our only wish is that Joan of Arc brings to mind their struggles.

## **History Of The Hundred Years War**

In 1328, following the sudden extinction of the Capetienne lineage by the unexpected deaths of the 3 sons of Philippe le Bel, the French chose Philippe, the count of Valois, as king rather than Edouard III, the king of England and nephew of the deceased French king.

In January of 1340, in an effort to use his French heritage to bolster his claim to the throne, Edouard III gave himself the title 'king of France' and decorated his armaments with the fleur de lys symbol. Shortly thereafter began a series of battles which made enemies of two peoples who had, until that time, remained amicable despite previous disagreements and misunderstandings. These battles were marked by a series of crushing defeats for the French: Crécy and Calais (1346), Poitiers (1356), and Agincourt (1415).

The 14th century, in general a time of misery in Europe -including the Great Famine of 1315-16 and, above all, the Black Plague of 1348- was also a time of social troubles in France -The Harelle of Rouen, the Tuchins of Auvergne and Languedoc, the Maillotins of Paris.

In 1415 Fearless John, duke of Bourgogne, signed the Pact of Calais with Henry V of England, by which he recognized the king of England and his descendants as heirs to the French throne. With Philippe the Good (son of Fearless John and the new duke of Bourgogne) acting as delegate to the king of France (Charles

VI) an agreement was signed at Arras on december 2, 1419 by which Henry V would marry Catherine of France, daughter of Charles VI. By this accord, it was understood that the heritage of Valois would revert to the king of England after the death of his parents-in-law. This agreement, which would effectively eliminate the Prince, was to be ratified and turned into a solemn treaty on May 2, 1420 at Troyes. France and England would thereafter be united under the English crown: 'immediately following our deaths, and from that time forward, the crown and the kingdom of France, with their rights and possessions, will belong perpetually to our son, king Henry, and to his heirs,' declared article six of the treaty.

This was, henceforth, the plight of the prince Charles: officially banished, disowned by his own parents and torn from the throne, he took refuge beyond the Loire while his followers dropped in numbers. The destiny of France thereafter looked assured when the unexpected happened: Henry V, at the age of 36, fell ill and died at Vincennes on August 31, 1422. Two months later, on October 21, Charles VI absconded to his tower. At the time of the death of Charles VI, the English heir to the throne, Henry VI, was but a baby of 10 months and unfit to be crowned king. It was during this time that the strange rumours began to circulate : we remember that through the town of Gien passed ' a young girl called the Pucelle,' assuring that she was in the service of the noble prince to help lift the siege of Orleans and to deliver him to Reims so that he could be crowned king.

## DALAI LAMA IN HISTORY

HIS HOLINESS the 14th the Dalai Lama Tenzin Gyatso, is the head of state and spiritual leader of the Tibetan people. He was born Lhamo Dhondrub on 6 July 1935, in a small village called Taktser in northeastern Tibet. Born to a peasant family, His Holiness was recognized at the age of two, in accordance with Tibetan tradition, as the reincarnation of his predecessor the 13th Dalai Lama, and thus an incarnation Avalokitesvara, the Buddha of Compassion.

The Dalai Lamas are the manifestations of the Bodhisattva (Buddha) of Compassion, who chose to reincarnate to serve the people. Lhamo Dhondrub was, as Dalai Lama, renamed Jetsun Jamphel Ngawang Lobsang Yeshe Tenzin Gyatso - Holy Lord, Gentle Glory, Compassionate, Defender of the Faith, Ocean of Wisdom. Tibetans normally refer to His Holiness as Yeshe Norbu, the Wishfulfilling Gem or simply Kundun -The Presence. The enthronement ceremony took place on February 22, 1940 in Lhasa, the capital of Tibet.

### Education In Tibet

He began his education at the age of six and completed the Geshe Lharampa Degree (Doctorate of Buddhist Philosophy) when he was 25 in 1959. At 24, he took the preliminary examinations at each of the three monastic universities: Drepung, Sera and Ganden. The final examination was conducted in the Jokhang, Lhasa during the annual Monlam Festival of Prayer, held in the first month of every year Tibetan calendar.

### Leadership Responsibilities

On November 17, 1950, His Holiness was called upon to assume full political power (head of the State and Government) after some 80,000 Peoples Liberation Army soldiers invaded Tibet. In 1954, he went to Beijing to talk peace with Mao Tse-tung and other Chinese leaders, including Chou En-lai and Deng Xiaoping. In 1956, while visiting India to attend the 2500th Buddha Jayanti Anniversary, he had a series of meetings with Prime Minister Nehru and Premier Chou about deteriorating conditions in Tibet.

His efforts to bring about a peaceful solution to Sino-Tibetan conflict were thwarted by Beijing's ruthless policy in Eastern Tibet, which ignited a popular uprising and resistance. This resistance movement spread to other parts of the country. On 10 March 1959 the capital of Tibet, Lhasa, exploded with the largest demonstration in Tibetan history, calling on China to leave Tibet and reaffirming Tibet's

independence. The Tibetan National Uprising was brutally crushed by the Chinese army. His Holiness escaped to India where he was given political asylum. Some 80,000 Tibetan refugees followed His Holiness into exile. Today, there are more than 120,000 Tibetan in exile. Since 1960, he has resided in Dharamsala, India, known as 'Little Lhasa,' the seat of the Tibetan Government-in-exile.

In the early years of exile, His Holiness appealed to the United Nations on the question of Tibet, resulting in three resolutions adopted by the General Assembly in 1959, 1961, and 1965, calling on China to respect the human rights of Tibetans and their desire for self-determination. With the newly constituted Tibetan Government-in-exile, His Holiness saw that his immediate and urgent task was to save the both the Tibetan exiles and their culture alike. Tibetan refugees were rehabilitated in agricultural settlements. Economic development was promoted and the creation of a Tibetan educational system was established to raise refugee children with full knowledge of their language, history, religion and culture.

The Tibetan Institute of Performing Arts was established in 1959, while the Central Institute of Higher Tibetan Studies became a university for Tibetans in India. Over 200 monasteries have been re-established to preserve the vast corpus of Tibetan Buddhist teachings, the essence of the Tibetan way of life.

In 1963, His Holiness promulgated a democratic constitution, based on Buddhist principles and the Universal Declaration of Human Rights as a model for a future free Tibet. Today, members of the Tibetan parliament are elected directly by the people. The members of the Tibetan Cabinet are elected by the parliament, making the Cabinet answerable to the Parliament. His Holiness has continuously emphasized the need to further democratise the Tibetan administration and has publicly declared that once Tibet regains her independence he will not hold political office.

In Washington, D.C., at the Congressional Human Rights Caucus in 1987, he proposed a Five-Point Peace Plan as a first step toward resolving the future status of Tibet. This plan calls for the designation of Tibet as a zone of peace, an end to the massive transfer of ethnic Chinese into Tibet, restoration of fundamental human rights and democratic freedoms, and the abandonment of China's use of Tibet for nuclear weapons production and the dumping of nuclear waste, as well as urging 'earnest negotiations' on the future of Tibet.

In Strasbourg, France, on 15 June 1988, he elaborated the Five-Point Peace Plan and proposed the creation of a self-governing democratic Tibet, 'in association with the People's Republic of China.' On 2 September 1991, the Tibetan Government-in-exile declared the Strasbourg Proposal invalid because of the closed and negative attitude of the present Chinese leadership towards the ideas expressed in the proposal.

On 9 October 1991, during an address at Yale University in the United States, His Holiness said that he wanted to visit Tibet to personally assess the political situation. He said, 'I am extremely anxious that, in this explosive situation, violence may break out. I want to do what I can to prevent this.... My visit would be a new opportunity to promote understanding and create a basis for a negotiated solution.'

### **Contact With West And East**

Since 1967, His Holiness initiated a series of journeys which have taken him to some 46 nations. In autumn of 1991, he visited the Baltic States at the invitation of Lithuanian President Vytautas Landsbergis of Lithuania and became the first foreign leader to address the Lithuanian Parliament. His Holiness met with the late Pope Paul VI at the Vatican in 1973. At a press conference in Rome in 1980, he outlined his hopes for the meeting with John Paul II: 'We live in a period of great crisis, a period of troubling world developments. It is not possible to find peace in the soul without security and harmony between peoples.'

For this reason, I look forward with faith and hope to my meeting with the Holy Father; to an exchange of ideas and feelings, and to his suggestions, so as to open the door to a progressive pacification between peoples.' His Holiness met Pope John Paul II at the Vatican in 1980, 1982, 1986, 1988 and 1990. In 1981, His Holiness talked with Archbishop of Canterbury, Dr. Robert Runcie, and with other leaders of the Anglican Church in London. He also met with leaders of the Roman Catholic and Jewish communities and spoke at an interfaith service held in his honor by the World Congress of Faiths: 'I always believe that it is much better to have a variety of religions, a variety of philosophies, rather than one single religion or philosophy. This is necessary because of the different mental dispositions of each human being. Each religion has certain unique ideas or techniques, and learning about them can only enrich one's own faith.'

### **Recognition And Awards**

Since his first visit to the west in the early 1973, a number of western universities and institutions have conferred Peace Awards and honorary Doctorate Degrees in recognition of His Holiness' distinguished writings in Buddhist philosophy and for his leadership in the solution of international conflicts, human rights issues and global environmental problems. In presenting the Raoul Wallenberg Congressional Human Rights Award in 1989, U.S. Congressman Tom Lantos said, 'His Holiness the Dalai Lama's courageous struggle has distinguished him as a leading proponent of human rights and world peace. His ongoing efforts to end the suffering of the Tibetan people through peaceful negotiations and reconciliation have required enormous courage and sacrifice.'

### **The 1989 Nobel Peace Prize**

The Norwegian Nobel Committee's decision to award the 1989 Peace Prize to His Holiness the Dalai Lama won worldwide praise and applause, with exception of China. The Committee's citation read, 'The Committee wants to emphasize the fact that the Dalai Lama in his struggle for the liberation of Tibet consistently has opposed the use of violence. He has instead advocated peaceful solutions based upon tolerance and mutual respect in order to preserve the historical and cultural heritage of his people.'



On 10 December 1989, His Holiness accepted the prize on the behalf of oppressed everywhere and all those who struggle for freedom and work for world peace and the people of Tibet. In his remarks he said, 'The prize reaffirms our conviction that with truth, courage and determination as our weapons, Tibet will be liberated. Our struggle must remain nonviolent and free of hatred.'

He also had a message of encouragement for the student-led democracy movement in China. 'In China the popular movement for democracy was crushed by brutal force in June this year. But I do not believe the demonstrations were in vain, because the spirit of freedom was rekindled among the Chinese people and China cannot escape the impact of this spirit of freedom sweeping in many parts of the world. The brave students and their supporters showed the Chinese leadership and the world the human face of that great nations.'

### A Simple Buddhist Monk

His Holiness often says, 'I am just a simple Buddhist monk -no more, nor less.' His Holiness follows the life of Buddhist monk. Living in a small cottage in Dharamsala, he rises at 4 A.M. to meditate, pursues an ongoing schedule of administrative meetings, private audiences and religious teachings and ceremonies. He concludes each day with further prayer before retiring. In explaining his greatest sources of inspiration, he often cites a favorite verse, found in the writings of the renowned eighth century Buddhist saint Shantideva:

*For as long as space endures  
And for as long as living beings remain,  
Until then may I too abide  
To dispel the misery of the world.*  
*For as long as space endures  
And for as long as living beings remain,  
Until then may I too abide  
To dispel the misery of the world.*

Born on July 6, 1935 the Dalai Lama real name is Lhamo Thondup. He was born to a poor family in Taktser in the province of Amdo. His parents were farmers and he had an older sister and three older brothers. After he was identified he was first taken to Kumbum monastery. Then in the summer of 1939 he was taken to the capital Lhasa. Later during the winter of 1940 he was taken to the Potala Palace. There he was officially installed as the spiritual leader of Tibet. Soon after the Dalai Lama was taken to Jokhang temple where he was inducted as a novice monk.

Once inducted he was required to be shaven headed and attired in maroon robes. From there he began to receive his primary education. His studies included logic, Tibtean art and culture, Sanskrit, medicine and Buddhist philosophy. In 1950 news came that an army of 80,000 soldiers of the PLA had crossed the Drichu river.

As the news got worse people began to advocate that the Dalai Lama be given

his full temporal power. At 15 years of age the Dalai Lama was enthroned as the temporal leader of Tibet. To mark the occasion the Dalai Lama granted amnesty whereby all the prisoners were set free. This is an interesting point.

First because it meant that such prisoners who had committed crimes such as rape and murder who set free. Further it was also alleged that the prison was engaged in torture of ordinary Tibetan people which breached human rights. The prisons were also a way of suppressing peoples rights and freedom. Lets realize that the Dalai Lama and his inner circle lived a life of incredible luxury while the people starved.

Delegations were sent abroad to America, Great Britain and Nepal in the hope of persuading these countries to intervene on behalf of Tibet. Another delegation went to China. Although the delegation to China reached its destination the other delegations were turned back. In effect these countries at that time were recognizing China's claim to Tibet.

Shortly afterwards the Dalai Lama move to southern Tibet. In 1958 during a consultation with Nechung Oracle the Dalai Lama was given instruction to leave Tibet. Three weeks after leaving the Dalai Lama reached the Indian border from where they were escorted by Indian guards to Bomdila. The Indian government provided asylum to the Dalai Lama and his followers in India.

### **Dalai Lama Begins Exile**

The Dalai Lama, fleeing the Chinese suppression of a national uprising in Tibet, crosses the border into India, where he is granted political asylum. Born in Taktser, China, as Tensin Gyatso, he was designated the 14th Dalai Lama in 1940, a position that eventually made him the religious and political leader of Tibet. At the beginning of the 20th century, Tibet increasingly came under Chinese control, and in 1950 communist China invaded the country.

One year later, a Tibetan-Chinese agreement was signed in which the nation became a 'national autonomous region' of China, supposedly under the traditional rule of the Dalai Lama but actually under the control of a Chinese communist commission. The highly religious people of Tibet, who practice a unique form of Buddhism, suffered under communist China's anti-religious legislation.

After years of scattered protests, a full-scale revolt broke out in March 1959, and the Dalai Lama was forced to flee as the uprising was crushed by Chinese troops. On March 31, 1969, he began a permanent exile in India, settling at Dharamsala in Punjab, where he established a democratically based shadow Tibetan government. Back in Tibet, the Chinese adopted brutal repressive measures against the Tibetans, provoking charges from the Dalai Lama of genocide.

With the beginning of the Cultural Revolution in China, the Chinese suppression of Tibetan Buddhism escalated, and practice of the religion was banned and thousands of monasteries were destroyed. Although the ban was lifted in 1976, protests in Tibet continued, and the exiled Dalai Lama won widespread internation-

al support for the Tibetan independence movement. In 1989, he was awarded the Nobel Prize for Peace in recognition of his nonviolent campaign to end the Chinese domination of Tibet.

### **The History Of Tibet**

Legend tells the Tibetan history starts with a monkey and a siren. The monkey was sent by Avalokiteshvara (Chenrezi) for religious retreat on the high plateau. The siren managed to persuade him to marry her. Having the permission of Avalokiteshvara, they married and had 6 children. They were believed to be the ancestor of the Tibetan people. However, archeology and geology discovery makes ethnologists believe Tibetans are decedents of aborigines and nomadic Qiang tribes. According to archeological discovery, Tibetan history can be traced to 4,000 years ago.

However, the historic records show that not until the 7th century can Tibetans be recognized as a race of people. The rising Yarlung Dynasty (Tubo Kingdom) unified Tibet and became an aggressive power. Inter-court marriages were adopted to for political reason. Nepal and China married their princesses to Songtsen Gampo, the outstanding king of Tibetan people. The two princesses brought with them peace and also Buddhism which Tibetans fully converted to before long. Songtsen Gampo embraced the religion.

The first transmission of Buddhism came to the snow land. The king's successors followed the religion also and in 779 King Trisong Detsen, set up the first Buddhist temple in Tibet, Samye Monastery and Buddhism was recognized as state religion. Great religious teacher, Padmasambhava was invited to Tibet. The Buddhism influence spread as the expansion of the Tibetan empire continued. The indigenous Bon was not satisfied with the popularity of Buddhism in the royal family and fought back. In 836, King Ralpachen was assassinated and Lang Darma was installed king, who believed Bon and objected Buddhism.

Severe persecution against Buddhists ended the first Buddhism transmission. Lang Darma, in 842, was assassinated also by a Buddhist and the Yarlung Dynasty collapsed and Tibet became decentralized principalities struggling for power.

In 1042, Atisa was invited to Tibet to launch the second Buddhism transmission and Buddhism gradually revived. And Buddhism divided into many sects and subsects, which rigorously debated with each other and sought among warring principalities for patronage for dominance.

In the twelfth century, the Mongol Empire rose to power and expanded aggressively. Sakya lama, Sakya Pandit found patronage from the Mongols and offered Tibet's submission. In 1254, Kublai Khan granted supreme authority over Tibet to Sakya Pandit's nephew, the leader of Sakya order. Sakya Pandit was appointed to become the imperial preceptor and a high official in his court. Tibet was thus incorporated as one 13 provinces of China! At the end of the Yuan Dynasty, Sakya order declined and was replaced by Kagyu order, whose patron offered tribute to the imperial court and was conferred with titles and authority to administrate. After the

Ming Dynasty was established, Tibetan high lamas were summoned to the imperial court to receive titles and appointments.

In 1751, Mongol Alton Khan gave his submission to the Ming Dynasty and asked for the imperial permission to invite Sonam Gyatso, the third Dalai Lama to give him spiritual guide. In 1578, Alton Khan conferred Sonam Gyatso the title of Dalai Lama. In 1641, under the patronage of Qosot Gushri Khan, Gandan Podrang Dynasty took the reign and Gelugpa, the order of Dalai Lama and Panchen Lama, stepped into political arena.

Soon the Manchurian Qing Dynasty came to power in China. In 1652, the fifth Dalai Lama was summoned to Beijing, and in 1653 he was reconferred with the title Dalai Lama and made religious leader of Tibet Buddhism by Emperor Shunzhi. Gushri Khan was given political and military authority. In 1682, the fifth Dalai Lama passed away and dispute arose in the identification of the sixth Dalai Lama. In 1709, Emperor Kangxi sent his imperial envoy to assist the local magistrate Lhabzang Khan, grandson of Gushri Khan.

Panchen Lama was conferred with the title Panchen Erdeni in 1713. Dzungar Mongols attacked Tibet in 1717, killed Lhabzang Khan, sacked monasteries and deposed of the sixth Dalai Lama. The Qing troops dispatched to Tibet escorted the newly installed seventh Dalai Lama and drove Dzungar out of Tibet. However, internal unrest happened again and Emperor sent his imperial troops to quench the turmoil and determined to reform the local administration.

After series reform, the local administrative authority fell to Dalai Lama and the imperial representative official in Tibet, who were equal in status. Lot drawing process was introduced to avoid dispute in the identification of high lamas and their installation should be approved by the central government in 1793. In 1904, British invaded Lhasa and the thirteenth Dalai Lama fled Qinghai. The weak Qing Dynasty could not protect Tibet from foreign invasion.

In 1911, Manchurian dynasty collapsed and Republic of China was founded. The thirteenth Dalai Lama's title, deprived of by the Qing Dynasty in 1910, was restored by the Republic of China. In 1923, dispute occurred between the thirteen Dalai Lama and the ninth Panchen Lama. Panchen Lama fled Qinghai and died there in 1937. Chinese Nationalist government successively approved the identification of reincarnations of the fourteenth Dalai Lama and the tenth Panchen Lama in 1940 and 1949. In 1951, Tibet was peacefully liberated under the 17-point Agreement on Measures for the Peaceful Liberation of Tibet.

## NELSON MANDELA IN HISTORY

MANDELA, Nelson Rolihlahla , 1918 -, South African political leader. He earned (1942) a law degree from the Univ. of South Africa and was prominent in Johannesburg's youth wing of the African National Congress (ANC). In 1952 he became ANC deputy national president, advocating nonviolent resistance to apartheid. However, after a group of peaceful demonstrators were massacred (1960) in Sharpeville, Mandela organized a paramilitary branch of the ANC to carry out guerrilla warfare against the white government. After being acquitted (1962) on charges of treason, he was arrested (1964) and convicted of sabotage and sentenced to life in prison, where he became the leading symbol of South Africa's oppressed black majority.

Released in 1990 as an expression of President de Klerk's commitment to change, Mandela was elected (July, 1991) ANC president after a triumphal global tour. He represented the ANC in the turbulent negotiations that led to establishment of majority rule. Mandela and de Klerk were jointly awarded the Nobel peace prize in 1993. In South Africa's first multiracial elections (1994), Mandela was elected president, and served until 1999, when Thabo Mbeki succeeded him.

He married his second wife, Winnie Madikizela-Mandela, 1936. b. Nomzamo Winifred Madikizela, in 1958. A social worker, she joined the ANC and was her husband's champion while he was in prison, being herself imprisoned and 'banned' several times. In 1991 she was convicted in the 1988 kidnapping and beating of four young men, one of whom died, but she received a suspended sentence. Her brief tenure (1994 - 95) as a deputy minister in her husband's cabinet was turbulent. The Mandelas separated in 1992 and were divorced in 1996. Winnie Mandela is head of the ANC Women's League and remains a member of parliament.

*Notes:*  
Nelson Mandela - was president of South Africa from 1994 to 1999. He was the country's first black president. Mandela was elected by the country's National Assembly. The Assembly had been chosen in South Africa's first elections in which the country's blacks were allowed to vote. Blacks won a majority of the Assembly seats, and the Assembly selected Mandela as president. These developments marked the beginning of a new era in South Africa. They resulted in blacks gaining control of the government after a long period of domination by the white minority.

Since 1991, Mandela had served as president of the African National Congress (ANC), a largely black group that opposed the South African government's policy of rigid racial segregation called apartheid. He had long been a leader of protests against apartheid and was imprisoned in 1962 on charges of conspiring to overthrow the white-minority government. While in prison, he became a symbol of the struggle for racial justice. After being freed in 1990, he led negotiations with white leaders that eventually brought an end to apartheid and established a non-racial system of government.

*Notes:*

Mandela and then-President F. W. de Klerk of South Africa won the 1993 Nobel Peace Prize. They were honoured for their work to end apartheid and to enable the country's nonwhites to fully participate in the South African government.

### **Early Life**

Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela was born in Umtata, in the Transkei territory of South Africa. His father was a chief of the Xhosa-speaking Tembu tribe. Mandela gave up his right to succeed his father and instead prepared for a legal career. He attended the University College of Fort Hare, studied law by correspondence at Witwatersrand University, and received a law degree from the University of South Africa in 1942. That year, in Soweto, he and a friend opened the first black law partnership in South Africa.

### **Imprisonment**

Mandela joined the ANC in 1944 and helped form the organization's Youth League. In 1948, the South African government established its policy of apartheid. The ANC called for equality for all races and began leading open resistance to the government. In 1956, the government charged Mandela with treason and other serious crimes, but he was found not guilty in 1961. The government had outlawed the ANC in 1960, but Mandela renewed the protests and went into hiding. He was arrested in 1962, convicted of sabotage and conspiracy, and sentenced to life in prison.

While Mandela was in prison, growing antiapartheid forces in South Africa argued that he should be freed. His wife at that time, Winnie Mandela, became a leading spokesperson for his cause. Shortly before Mandela's release in 1990, the government recognized the ANC as a legal political organization.

### **End Of White Rule**

After leaving prison, Mandela agreed to suspend an armed struggle the ANC had been waging against the South African government. Over the objections of more radical ANC members, he urged conciliation with South African President de Klerk and other government leaders. He sought to obtain political power for the country's blacks in a peaceful way.

In 1990 and 1991, the government repealed the laws that formed the legal basis of apartheid. But Mandela also negotiated an end to other forms of racial injustice, including laws that denied blacks the right to vote in national and provincial elections. The first truly open national elections in which all races could vote were held in April 1994. The ANC won a majority of the seats in the country's National Assembly, and Mandela became president. Mandela stepped down as head of the ANC in 1997. In 1999, he retired as president of South Africa.

In 1992, Mandela announced that he and his wife, Winnie, had agreed to separate. The couple was divorced in 1996. In 1998, Mandela and Graca Machel, the widow of President Somora Machel of Mozambique, were married.

### **South Africa -A Brief History**

The history of Southern Africa goes back into the recesses of time. The oldest surviving inhabitants are members of the Khoisan language groups but there are not many left in modern South Africa. Most black South Africans belong to the people which migrated south from central Africa, settling in the Transvaal region sometime before AD 100. It is totally incorrect to call them Bantu people. The word Bantu means people so that comes out as people. The Boers did not call them Africans for that would have implied, correctly, a prior ownership. The Boers called themselves Afrikaners to indicate, incorrectly, that it was their land.

The first Europeans to reach the Cape of Good Hope were the Portuguese who arrived in 1488. But it was nearly two centuries later before permanent European settlement. In 1652 the Dutch East India Company established a provisioning station on the Cape. This settlement later attracted French Huguenot refugees, the Dutch, and Germans who began to spread and settle in the Cape. Collectively they are now the Afrikaners.

By 1779, European settlements extended throughout the southern part of the Cape and east toward the Great Fish River. It was not a peaceful settlement. It was a land grab involving the subjugation of the Africans.

The British gained control of the Cape of Good Hope at the end of the 18th century and immediately came in to conflict with the Afrikaners. In 1836, partly because the British had abolished slavery, many Afrikaner farmers -Boers -pulled up roots and went north in what was to be known as the Great Trek. This brought them into conflict with several African groups, specifically and especially the Zulus.

Although they were beaten by the Boers in 1838 at the battle of Blood River they remained a potent force before being finally conquered in 1879. In 1852 and 1854, the independent Boer Republics of the Transvaal and Orange Free State were created.

The relationships between the Boers and the British were always strained. When diamonds were discovered at Kimberley in 1870 and deposits in the Witwatersrand region of the Transvaal in 1886, the situation became even more tense. British intrigue and Boer resistance to change led to the Anglo-Boer Wars of

1880-81 and 1899-1902. Britain won the war -but only just and after a series of humiliating defeats -and the republics were incorporated into the British Empire. In May 1910, the two republics and the British colonies of the Cape and Natal formed the Union of South Africa, a self-governing dominion of the British Empire. Its constitution meant that all political power was kept in the hands of whites.

In 1912, the South Africa Native National Congress was formed in Bloemfontein and eventually became known as the African National Congress. Its goals were the elimination of restrictions based on colour and an universal vote. The enfranchisement of and parliamentary representation for blacks. Despite these efforts, the government continued to pass laws limiting the rights and freedoms of Africans. That was the start of a long struggle, and in the 1960s the appalling Sharpeville massacre led to the banning of the party and the arrest and imprisonment of Nelson Mandela and many other anti-apartheid leaders. In May 1961, South Africa relinquished its dominion status and declared itself a republic.

In February 1990, State President F.W. de Klerk announced the lifting of bans on all other anti-apartheid groups. Two weeks later Nelson Mandela was released from prison. In 1991 all of the laws relating to apartheid were abolished. The country's first non-racial elections were held in 1994 and Nelson Mandela became President on May 10, 1994. He served until his retirement in 1999 and was succeeded as President by Thabo Mbeki.

*Resources:*

1. Hoobler, Dorothy and Thomas. Mandela. Watts, 1992.
2. Hughes, Libby. Nelson Mandela. Dillon Pr., 1992. Younger readers.
3. Mandela, Nelson. Long Walk to Freedom: The Autobiography of Nelson Mandela. Little, Brown, 1994. Nelson Mandela Speaks. Pathfinder Pr., 1993. Nelson Mandela: The Struggle Is My Life. Rev. ed., 1990.
4. Sanford J. Ungar, Nelson Mandela, World Book Encyclopedia (2002), 01-01-2002.



## SIDDHARTHA GAUTAMA IN HISTORY

THE OTHER major challenge to orthodox Vedism was founded by the son of a chief of a region called the Shakyas. This region lay among the foothills of the Himalayas in the farthest northern regions of the plains of India in Nepal. This founder, Siddhartha Gautama, the Buddha, has many legends and stories that have accreted around his life. While we can't be certain which of these stories and legends are true and which of the thousands of sayings attributed to him were actually said by him, we do know that the basic historical outlines of his life are accurate.

He was the chief's son of a tribal group, the Shakyas, so he was born a Kshatriya around 566 BC. At the age of twenty-nine, he left his family in order to lead an ascetic life. A few years later he reappears with a number of followers; he and his followers devote their lives to 'The Middle Way,' a lifestyle that is midway between a completely ascetic lifestyle and one that is world-devoted. At some point he gained 'enlightenment' and began to preach this new philosophy in the region of Bihar and Uttar Kadesh. His teaching lasted for several decades and he perished at a very old age, somewhere in his eighties.

Following his death, only a small group of followers continued in his footsteps. Calling themselves bhikkus, or 'disciples,' they wandered the countryside in yellow robes (in order to indicate their bhakti, or 'devotion' to the master). For almost two hundred years, these followers of Buddha were a small, relatively inconsequential group among an infinite variety of Hindu sects. But when the great Mauryan emperor, Asoka, converted to Buddhism in the third century BC, the young, inconsequential religion spread like wildfire throughout India and beyond. Most significantly, the religion was carried across the Indian Ocean (a short distance, actually) to Sri Lanka. The Buddhists of Sri Lanka maintained the original form of Siddhartha's teachings, or at least, they maintained a form that was most similar to the original. While in the rest of India, and later the world, Buddhism fragmented into a million sects, the original form, called Theravada Buddhism, held its ground in Sri Lanka.

### Who Is Buddha?

As mentioned above Buddha can refer to the historical Buddha Shakyamuni or to anyone who has attained full enlightenment. Geshe Kelsang Gyatso explains in *Introduction to Buddhism*: In general, 'Buddha' means 'Awakened One', someone who has awakened from the sleep of ignorance and sees things as they really are. A

Buddha is a person who is completely free from all faults and mental obstructions. There are many people who have become Buddhas in the past, and many people will become Buddhas in the future....There is nothing that Buddha does not know. Because he has awakened from the sleep of ignorance and has removed all obstructions from his mind, he knows everything of the past, present, and future, directly and simultaneously.

Moreover, Buddha has great compassion which is completely impartial, embracing all living beings without discrimination. He benefits all living beings without exception by emanating various forms throughout the universe, and by bestowing his blessings on their minds. Through receiving Buddha's blessings, all being, even the lowliest animals, sometimes develop peaceful and virtuous states of mind. Eventually, through meeting an emanation of Buddha in the form of a Spiritual Guide, everyone will have the opportunity to enter the path to liberation and enlightenment. As the great Indian Buddhist scholar Nagarjuna said, there is no one who has not received help from Buddha.

It is impossible to describe all the good qualities of a Buddha. A Buddha's compassion, wisdom, and power are completely beyond conception. With nothing left to obscure his mind, he sees all phenomena throughout the universe as clearly as he sees a jewel held in the palm of his hand. Through the force of his or her compassion, a Buddha spontaneously does whatever is appropriate to benefit others. He has no need to think about what is the best way to help living beings -he naturally and effortlessly acts in the most beneficial way. Just as the sun does not need to motivate itself to radiate light and heat but does so simply because light and heat are its very nature, so a Buddha does not need to motivate himself to benefit others but does so simply because being beneficial is his very nature.

Like the reflections of the moon that effortlessly appear in any body of still water, a Buddha's emanations spontaneously appear wherever living beings' minds are capable of perceiving them. Buddhas can emanate in any form whatsoever to help living beings. Sometimes they manifest as Buddhists and sometimes as non-Buddhists. They can manifest as women or men, monarchs or tramps, law-abiding citizens or criminals. They can even manifest as animals, as wind or rain, or as mountains or islands. Unless we are a Buddha ourselves we cannot possibly say who or what is an emanation of a Buddha.

Of all the ways in which a Buddha helps living beings, the supreme way is by emanation as a Spiritual Guide. Through his or her teachings and immaculate example, an authentic Spiritual Guide leads his or her disciples along the spiritual path to liberation and enlightenment. If we meet a qualified Mahayana Spiritual Guide and put into practice everything he or she teaches, we shall definitely attain full enlightenment and become a Conqueror Buddha. We shall then be in a position to repay the kindness of all living beings by liberating them from the sufferings of samsara and leading them to the supreme bliss of Buddhahood.

## The Buddha

In the sixth century before the Christian era, religion was forgotten in India. The lofty teachings of the Vedas were thrown into the background. There was much priestcraft everywhere. The insincere priests traded on religion. They duped the people in a variety of ways and amassed wealth for themselves. They were quite irreligious. In the name of religion, people followed in the footsteps of the cruel priests and performed meaningless rituals. They killed innocent dumb animals and did various sacrifices. The country was in dire need of a reformer of Buddha's type. At such a critical period, when there were cruelty, degeneration and unrighteousness everywhere, reformer Buddha was born to put down priestcraft and animal sacrifices, to save the people and disseminate the message of equality, unity and cosmic love everywhere.

## Birth

Buddha's father was Suddhodana, king of the Sakhyas. Buddha's mother was named Maya. Buddha was born in B.C. 560 and died at the age of eighty in B.C. 480. The place of his birth was a grove known as Lumbini, near the city of Kapilavastu, at the foot of Mount Palpa in the Himalayan ranges within Nepal. This small city Kapilavastu stood on the bank of the little river Rohini, some hundred miles north-east of the city of Varnasi.

As the time drew nigh for Buddha to enter the world, the gods themselves prepared the way before him with celestial portents and signs. Flowers bloomed and gentle rains fell, although out of season; heavenly music was heard, delicious scents filled the air. The body of the child bore at birth the thirty-two auspicious marks (Mahavyanjana) which indicated his future greatness, besides secondary marks (Anuvyanjana) in large numbers. Maya died seven days after her son's birth. The child was brought up by Maya's sister Mahaprajapati, who became its foster-mother.

## Astrologer's Prediction

On the birth of the child, Siddhartha, the astrologers predicted to its father Suddhodana: 'The child, on attaining manhood, would become either a universal monarch (Chakravarti), or abandoning house and home, would assume the robe of a monk and become a Buddha, a perfectly enlightened soul, for the salvation of mankind'. Then the king said: 'What shall my son see to make him retire from the world?'

The astrologer replied: 'Four signs'.

'What four?' asked the king.

'A decrepit old man, a diseased man, a dead man and a monk -these four will make the prince retire from the world' replied the astrologers.

### **Suddhodana's Precaution**

Suddhodana thought that he might lose his precious son and tried his level best to make him attached to earthly objects. He surrounded him with all kinds of luxury and indulgence, in order to retain his attachment for pleasures of the senses and prevent him from undertaking a vow of solitariness and poverty. He got him married and put him in a walled place with gardens, fountains, palaces, music, dances, etc. Countless charming young ladies attended on Siddhartha to make him cheerful and happy.

In particular, the king wanted to keep away from Siddhartha the 'four signs' which would move him to enter into the ascetic life. 'From this time on' said the king, 'let no such persons be allowed to come near my son. It will never do for my son to become a Buddha. What I would wish to see is, my son exercising sovereign rule and authority over the four great continents and the two thousand attendant isles, and walking through the heavens surrounded by a retinue thirty-six leagues in circumference'. And when he had so spoken, he placed guards for quarter of a league, in each of the four directions, in order that none of the four kinds of men might come within sight of his son.

### **Renunciation**

Buddha's original name was Siddhartha. It meant one who had accomplished his aim. Gautama was Siddhartha's family name. Siddhartha was known all over the world as Buddha, the Enlightened. He was also known by the name of Sakhya Muni, which meant an ascetic of the Sakhya tribe. Siddhartha spent his boyhood at Kapilavastu and its vicinity. He was married at the age of sixteen. His wife's name was Yasodhara. Siddhartha had a son named Rahula. At the age of twenty-nine, Siddhartha Gautama suddenly abandoned his home to devote himself entirely to spiritual pursuits and Yogic practices.

A mere accident turned him to the path of renunciation. One day he managed, somehow or the other, to get out of the walled enclosure of the palace and roamed about in the town along with his servant Channa to see how the people were getting on. The sight of a decrepit old man, a sick man, a corpse and a monk finally induced Siddhartha to renounce the world. He felt that he also would become a prey to old age, disease and death. Also, he noticed the serenity and the dynamic personality of the monk. Let me go beyond the miseries of this Samsara (worldly life) by renouncing this world of miseries and sorrows. This mundane life, with all its luxuries and comforts, is absolutely worthless. I also am subject to decay and am not free from the effect of old age. Worldly happiness is transitory'.

Gautama left for ever his home, wealth, dominion, power, father, wife and the only child. He shaved his head and put on yellow robes. He marched towards Rajgriha, the capital of the kingdom of Magadha. There were many caves in the neighboring hills. Many hermits lived in those caves. Siddhartha took Alara Kalama,

a hermit, as his first teacher. He was not satisfied with his instructions. He left him and sought the help of another recluse named Uddaka Ramaputta for spiritual instructions. At last he determined to undertake Yogic practices. He practiced severe Tapas (austerities) and Pranayama (practice of breath control) for six years. He determined to attain the supreme peace by practicing self-mortification. He abstained almost entirely from taking food.

He did not find much progress by adopting this method. He was reduced to a skeleton. He became exceedingly weak. At that moment, some dancing girls were passing that way singing joyfully as they played on their guitar. Buddha heard their song and found real help in it. The song the girls sang had no real deep meaning for them, but for Buddha it was a message full of profound spiritual significance. It was a spiritual pick-me-up to take him out of his despair and infuse power, strength and courage. The song was:

*Fair goes the dancing when the Sitar is tuned,  
Tune us the Sitar neither low nor high,  
And we will dance away the hearts of men.  
The string overstretched breaks, the music dies,  
The string overslack is dumb and the music dies,  
Tune us the Sitar neither low nor high.'*

Buddha realized then that he should not go to extremes in torturing the body by starvation and that he should adopt the golden mean or the happy medium or the middle path by avoiding extremes. Then he began to eat food in moderation. He gave up the earlier extreme practices and took to the middle path.

### **Enlightenment**

Once Buddha was in a dejected mood as he did not succeed in his Yogic practices. He knew not where to go and what to do. A village girl noticed his sorrowful face. She approached him and said to him in a polite manner:

'Revered sir, may I bring some food for you? It seems you are very hungry'.

Gautama looked at her and said, 'What is your name, my dear sister?'.

The maiden answered, 'Venerable sir, my name is Sujata'.

Gautama said, 'Sujata, I am very hungry. Can you really appease my hunger?'

The innocent Sujata did not understand Gautama. Gautama was spiritually hungry. He was thirsting to attain supreme peace and Self-realization. He wanted spiritual food. Sujata placed some food before Gautama and entreated him to take it. Gautama smiled and said, 'Beloved Sujata, I am highly pleased with your kind and benevolent nature. Can this food appease my hunger?'.

Sujata replied, 'Yes sir, it will appease your hunger. Kindly take it now'.

Gautama began to eat the food underneath the shadow of a large tree, thence-

forth to be called as the great 'Bo-tree' or the tree of wisdom. Gautama sat in a meditative mood underneath the tree from early morning to sunset, with a fiery determination and an iron resolve: 'Let me die. Let my body perish. Let my flesh dry up. I will not get up from this seat till I get full illumination'. He plunged himself into deep meditation.

At night he entered into Deep Samadhi (superconscious state) underneath that sacred Bo-tree (Pipal tree or ficus religiosa). He was tempted by Mara in a variety of ways, but he stood adamant. He came out victorious with the full illumination called Annuttara Samyak Sambodhi, the Consummation of Incomparable Enlightenment.

His face shone with divine splendour and effulgence. He got up from his seat and danced in divine ecstasy for seven consecutive days and nights around the sacred Bo-tree. Then he came to the normal plane of consciousness. His heart was filled with profound mercy and compassion. He wanted to share what he had with humanity. He travelled all over India and preached his doctrine and gospel. He became a saviour, deliverer and redeemer.

Buddha gave out the experiences of his Samadhi: 'I thus behold my mind released from the defilement of earthly existence, released from the defilement of sensual pleasures, released from the defilement of heresy, released from the defilement of ignorance.'

While still seated following his Enlightenment, but before his departure for Benares and prior to beginning any teaching, two merchants, called in the texts Tapussa and Bhallika, along with their caravans came across the Buddha under the Bodhi-tree. Both merchants bowed and were deeply moved by his splendour and supreme presence, becoming as it were, the Buddha's first 'converts.' (1)

When the Buddha was walking along the road to Benares following his post-Enlightenment pause he was approached by Upaka, a wandering ascetic. According to the custom of the time the ascetic greeted him and asked who his teacher was or what doctrine he followed. The Buddha told the wanderling that he was 'the Victor and Conqueror of the World, superior to gods and men, an All-Enlightened One beholden to no teacher.' The wandering ascetic could see no hint of anything of the Buddha's nature and wandered off as wanderlings are to do, mumbling under his breath something like, 'If it were only so!' (2)

It is said the journey on foot to Benares and the Deer Park from the Bodhi-tree took eight days. There the Buddha met five of his former followers, named in the texts as Kaundinya, Mahanaman, Vaspa, Asvajit, and Bhadrajit. When they first saw Sakyamuni coming toward them from the distance they were initially unaware of the profound change that had taken place and at first thought he was not worthy of their respect. However, as he came nearer their condescending attitude began to wane and shortly thereafter were convinced that he was a teacher worthy of their attention and reverence. (3)

Buddha told his disciples not to enquire into the origin of the world, into the existence and nature of God. He said to them that such investigations were practically useless and likely to distract their minds.

### **Spreading The Doctrine**

The number of Buddha's followers gradually increased. Nobles, Brahmins and many wealthy men became his disciples. Buddha paid no attention to caste. The poor and the outcastes were admitted to his order. Those who wanted to become full members of his order were obliged to become monks and to observe strict rules of conduct. Buddha had many lay disciples also. Those lay members had to provide for the wants of the monks.

In the forest of Uruvila, there were three brothers -all very famous monks and philosophers. They had many learned disciples. They were honoured by kings and potentates. Lord Buddha went to Uruvila and lived with those three monks. He converted those three reputed monks, which caused a great sensation all over the country.

Lord Buddha and his disciples walked on towards Rajgriha, the capital of Magadha. Bimbisara, the king, who was attended upon by 120,000 Brahmins and householders, welcomed Buddha and his followers with great devotion. He heard the sermon of Lord Buddha and at once became his disciple. 110,000 of the Brahmins and householders became full members of Lord Buddha's order and the remaining 10,000 became lay adherents. Buddha's followers were treated with contempt when they went to beg their daily food. Bimbisara made Buddha a present of Veluvanam -a bamboo-grove, one of the royal pleasure-gardens near his capital. Lord Buddha spent many rainy seasons there with his followers.

Every Buddhist monk takes a vow, when he puts on the yellow robe, to abstain from killing any living being. Therefore, a stay in one place during the rainy season becomes necessary. Even now, the Paramahansa Sannyasins (the highest class of renunciates) of Sankara's order stay in one place for four months during the rainy season (Chaturmas). It is impossible to move about in the rainy season without killing countless small insects, which the combined influence of moisture and the hot sun at the season brings into existence.

### **The First And Second Nun**

Lord Buddha received from his father a message asking him to visit his native place, so that he might see him once more before he died. Buddha accepted his invitation gladly and started for Kapilavastu. He stayed in a forest outside the city. His father and relatives came to see him, but they were not pleased with their ascetic Gautama. They left the place after a short time. They did not make any arrangement for his and his followers' daily food.

After all, they were worldly people. Buddha went to the city and begged his food from door to door. This news reached the ears of his father. He tried to stop

Gautama from begging. Gautama said: 'O king, I am a mendicant -I am a monk. It is my duty to get alms from door to door. This is the duty of the Order. Why do you stop this? The food that is obtained from alms is very pure'.

His father did not pay any attention to the words of Gautama. He snatched the bowl from his hand and took him to his palace. All came to pay Buddha their respects, but his wife Yasodhara did not come. She said, 'He himself will come to me, if I am of any value in his eyes'. She was a very chaste lady endowed with Viveka (discrimination), Vairagya (dispassion) and other virtuous qualities. The Princess Yasodhara was anxious to renounce the world from the time she knew about the Great Renunciation of the Prince. To avoid any flight from the palace, King Suddhodana took steps to intensify security measures.

The Princess, while grieving the loss of her husband and a father to their son, gradually became reconciled to His departure. Hearing that her husband had become an ascetic and to honour his austerities, she determined to live the simple life of a celibate renunciate within the palace walls. When the Buddha had greeted all His relatives and friends at His homecoming, He learned that Yasodhara refused to come into His presence. Knowing of her great sorrow, He requested His two chief disciples to accompany Him to her apartments. He told the monks to permit her grief to run its course during the time of reunion.

She awaited Him, dressed in a yellow robe, with shorn hair. Her abundance of affection overflowed and she held Him by the feet and wept bitterly. Regaining her composure, the Buddha spoke gently to her, expressing His deep esteem and appreciation of her as His ever-faithful wife, her unfailing devotion to Him, and her great assistance in helping Him win Enlightenment. Buddha established an order of female ascetics. After the death of King Suddhodana, when the Buddha's foster-mother Maha Pajapati Gotami became a Bhikkhuni, Yasodhara also entered the Order and later attained Arahantship (Enlightenment). It may be mentioned that Princess Yasodhara was of the same age as the Buddha. She predeceased the Buddha. Maha Pajapati and Yasodhara were the first and second of the Buddhist Nuns.

Yasodhara pointed out the passing Buddha to her son through a window and said, 'O Rahula! That monk is your father. Go to him and ask for your birthright. Tell him boldly, 'I am your son. Give me my heritage.'

Rahula at once went up to Buddha and said, 'Dear father, give me my heritage'. Buddha was taking his food then. He did not give any reply. The boy repeatedly asked for his heritage. Buddha went to the forest.

The boy also silently followed him to the forest. Buddha said to one of his disciples, 'I give this boy the precious spiritual wealth I acquired under the sacred Bo-tree. I make him the heir to that wealth'.

Rahula was initiated into the order of monks. When this news reached the ears of Buddha's father, he was very much grieved because after losing his son, he now



lost his grandson also.

Buddha performed some miracles. A savage serpent of great magical power sent forth fire against Buddha. Buddha turned his own body into fire and sent forth flames against the serpent. Once a tree bent down one of its branches in order to help Buddha when he wanted to come up out of the water of a tank. One day five hundred pieces of firewood split by themselves at Buddha's command. Buddha created five hundred vessels with fire burning in them for the Jatilas to warm themselves on a winter night. When there was flood, he caused the water to recede and then he walked over the water.

In contrast to the above, one day the Buddha met an ascetic who sat by the bank of a river. This ascetic had practised austerities for 25 years. The Buddha asked him what he had received for all his labour. The ascetic proudly replied that, now at last, he could cross the river by walking on the water. The Buddha pointed out that this gain was insignificant for all the years of labour, since he could cross the river using a ferry for one penny!

Ananda, some say either Buddha's brother or cousin, was one of the principal early disciples of Buddha and was a most devoted friend and disciple of Buddha. He was devoted to Buddha with a special fervour in a simple childlike way and served him as his personal attendant till the end of his life. He was very popular. He was a very sweet man with pleasant ways. He had no intellectual attainments, but he was a man of great sincerity and loving nature. Devadatta was also in the Order. Devadatta became Buddha's greatest rival and tried hard to oust Buddha and occupy the place himself. A barber named Upali and a countryman called Anuruddha were admitted into the Order. Upali became a distinguished leader of his Order. Anuruddha became a Buddhist philosopher of vast erudition.

### **Mahasamadhi:**

#### *The End Arrives*

Buddha went to Sravasti, the capital of the kingdom of Kosala. Here a wealthy merchant gave him for residence an extensive and beautiful forest. Buddha spent many rainy seasons there and delivered several grand discourses. Thus Lord Buddha preached his doctrine for over forty-five years travelling from place to place.

Unlike the preceding years, the last few weeks of the Buddha's life are recorded in great detail in the Mahaparinibbana Sutta (Discourse Concerning the Entry into Final Nirvana). Mara the Evil One confronted the Buddha during his last days, as, according to the tradition, he had done often during the Buddha's life. Nevertheless, the Buddha had always defeated Mara and grew spiritually each time. On this occasion he again urged the Buddha to retire from the earthly scene and enter final nirvana, and receive his just reward.

But this time Mara received what might be favourable response. Buddha assured Mara that he would die and enter nirvana in three months. The narrative

makes it clear however that there was no comfort to be derived from this fact by Mara, since the Order of Buddhist Brethren and the Order of the Sisters, and lay disciples of both sexes, were now thoroughly established. They had become? True hearers, wise and well-trained, ready and learned, ... able to tell others of the doctrine, preach it, make it known, establish it . . . and make it clear.'

There was in existence a Buddhist missionary task force ready and able to witness to the Dhamma and instruct converts in the Buddhist way. The Evil One could find little comfort in the Buddha's death, because his enemy had grown in size and stature. Seven days after the Buddha's death at Kushinagara, a small town (modern Kasia) to the northwest of Patna and just to the south of the border of Nepal, they cremated his body. The occasion was marked by ceremonies of the kind which in those days were observed at the death of a king. Each of the eight clan-groups received items of the Buddha, and after the cremation they built a sacred cairn over their portion of the artifacts, a form of memorial known in India as a stupa. The stupa became the object of the Buddhist devotions, and eventually, developed into the form known in South-East Asia as a 'pagoda.'

Buddha died of an illness brought on by some error in diet. He became ill through eating Sukara-maddavam, prepared for him by a lady adherent named Cundo. The word means 'hog's flesh' or possibly something which wild boars are fond of that has something of the nature of a truffle. Some say that it is not boar's flesh but Sukarakanda or hog's root, a bulbous root found chiefly in the jungle and which Hindus eat with great joy. It is a Phalahar that is eaten on days of fasting.

Buddha said to Ananda, 'Go Ananda, prepare for me, between twin Sal trees, a couch with the head northward. I am exhausted and would like to lie down'. A wonderful scene followed. The twin Sal trees burst into full bloom although it was not the blossoming season. Those flowers fell on the body of Buddha out of reverence. Divine coral tree flowers and divine sandalwood powders fell from above on Buddha's body out of reverence.

Lord Buddha said, 'Come now, dear monks. I bid you farewell. Compounds are subject to dissolution. Prosper ye through diligence and work out your salvation'.

## **The Enlightenment Sutra**

### *A Few Episodes*

The spirit of Ahimsa (non-violence) was ever present with Gautama from his very childhood. One day, his cousin Devadatta shot a bird. The poor creature was hurt and fell to the ground. Gautama ran forward, picked it up and refused to hand it over to his cousin. The quarrel was taken up before the Rajaguru who, however, decided in favour of Gautama to the great humiliation of Devadatta.

In his wanderings, Gautama one day saw a herd of goats and sheep winding their way through a narrow valley. Now and then the herdsman cried and ran forward and backward to keep the members of the fold from going astray. Among the

vast flock Gautama saw a little lamb, toiling behind, wounded in one part of the body and made lame by a blow of the herdsman. Gautama's heart was touched and he took it up in his arms and carried it saying, 'It is better to relieve the suffering of an innocent being than to sit on the rocks of Olympus or in solitary caves and watch unconcerned the sorrows and sufferings of humanity'.

Then, turning to the herdsman he said, 'Whither are you going, my friend, with this huge flock so great a hurry?'. 'To the king's palace' said the herdsman, 'We are sent to fetch goats and sheep for sacrifice which our master -the king -will start tonight in propitiation of the gods.' Hearing this, Gautama followed the herdsman, carrying the lamb in his arms. When they entered the city, word was circulated that a holy hermit had brought the sacrifices ordered by the king.

As Gautama passed through the streets, people came out to see the gracious and saintly figure of the youth clad in the yellow robes of a Sadhu (renunciate) and all were struck with wonder and awe at his noble mien and his sweet expression. The king was also informed of the coming of the holy man to the sacrifice. When the ceremonies commenced in the presence of the king, there was brought a goat ready to be killed and offered to the gods.

There it stood with its legs tied up and the high priest ready with a big blood-thirsty knife in his hand to cut the dumb animal's throat. In that cruel and tragic moment, when the life of the poor creature hung by a thread, Gautama stepped forward and cried, 'Stop the cruel deed, O king!'. And as he said this, he leaned forward and unfastened the bonds of the victim. 'Every creature' he said, 'loves to live, even as every human being loves to preserve his or her life'. The priest then threw the knife away like a repentant sinner and the king issued a royal decree throughout the land the next day, to the effect that no further sacrifice should be made in future and that all people should show mercy to birds and beasts alike.

Venerable Pindola Bharadvaja is one of the Buddha's sixteen disciples named in 'The Amitabha Sutra'. Under the Buddha's auspices he attained the holy fruit of Arhat. Once when in a jubilant mood, he said to the faithful: 'Do you think flying in the sky is magical? I will show you some spectacular acts.'

He then jumped up into the sky, FLEW all around and performed many miraculous acts. The faithful were all impressed and praised him without ceasing. The Buddha was very displeased upon learning of this incident. He asked the Venerable to come forth and admonished him, 'My teaching uses morality to change others and compassion to save living beings. It does not use magic to impress and confuse people. You have misused magic today. As punishment you stay in this world to work for more merits and to repent for this misbehaviour.'

Because the Venerable misused magic, although at the attainment level of an Arhat, he did not in his lifetime enter Nirvana. Magic cannot increase our virtue or eradicate defilements. Careless use will only build more obstacles to emancipation. It is obvious that magic is not the solution for cycles of rebirth (Enlightenment). Only

practicing virtue is the sure and steady approach toward the Buddha Path.

Kisagotami, a young woman, was married to the only son of a rich man and they had a male child. The child died when he was two years old. Kisagotami had intense attachment for the child. She clasped the dead child to her bosom, refused to part with it, and went from house to house, to her friends and relatives, asking them to give some medicine to bring the child back to life.

A Buddhist monk said to her: 'O good girl! I have no medicine. But go to Lord Buddha. He can surely give you a very good medicine. He is an ocean of mercy and love. The child will come back to life. Be not troubled'. She at once ran to Buddha and said, 'O venerable sir! Can you give any medicine to this child?' Buddha replied, 'Yes. I will give you a very good medicine. Bring some mustard seed from some house where no child or husband or wife or father or mother or servant had died'. She said, 'Very good, sir, I shall bring it in a short time'.

Carrying her dead child in her bosom, Kisagotami went to a house and asked for some mustard seed. The people of the house said, 'O lady, here is mustard seed. Take it'. Kisagotami asked, 'In your house, has any son or husband or wife, father or mother or servant died?'. They replied, 'O lady! You ask a very strange question. Many have died in our house'. Kisagotami went to another house and asked the same. The owner of the house said, 'I have lost my eldest son and my wife'. She went to a third house. People of the house answered, 'We have lost our parents'. She went to another house. The lady of the house said, 'I lost my husband last year'.

Ultimately Kisagotami was not able to find a single house where no one had died. Viveka and Vairagya dawned in her mind. She buried the dead body of her child. She began to reflect seriously on the problem of life and death in this world. Kisagotami then went to Lord Buddha and prostrated at his lotus feet. Buddha said to her, 'O good girl! Have you brought the mustard seed?' Kisagotami answered, 'I am not able to find a single house where no one has died'. Then Buddha said, 'All the objects of this world are perishable and impermanent. This world is full of miseries, troubles and tribulations. Man or woman is troubled by birth, death, disease, old age and pain. We should gain wisdom from experience. We should not expect for things that do not and will not happen. This expectation leads us to unnecessary misery and suffering. One should obtain Nirvana. Then only all sorrows will come to an end. One will attain immortality and eternal peace'. Kisagotami then becoming a disciple of Buddha, entered the Order becoming a Buddhist Nun, and later attained Arahanthood (Enlightenment).

Once Buddha went to the house of a rich Brahmin with bowl in hand. The Brahmin became very angry and said, 'O Bhikshu, why do you lead an idle life of wandering and begging? Is this not disgraceful? You have a well-built body. You can work. I plough and sow. I work in the fields and I earn my bread at the sweat of my brow. I lead a laborious life. It would be better if you also plough and sow and then you will have plenty of food to eat'. Buddha replied, 'O Brahmin! I also plough and

sow, and having ploughed and sown, I eat'.

The Brahmin said, 'You say you are an agriculturist. I do not see any sign of it. Where are your plough, bullocks and seeds?'

Then Buddha replied, 'O Brahmin! Just hear my words with attention. I sow the seed of faith. The good actions that I perform are the rain that waters the seeds. Viveka and Vairagya are parts of my plough. Righteousness is the handle. Meditation is the goad. Sama and Dama -tranquillity of the mind and restraint of the Indriyas (senses) -are the bullocks. Thus I plough the soil of the mind and remove the weeds of doubt, delusion, fear, birth and death. The harvest that comes in is the immortal fruit of Nirvana. All sorrows terminate by this sort of ploughing and harvesting'. The rich arrogant Brahmin came to his senses. His eyes were opened. He prostrated at the feet of Buddha and became his lay adherent.

### **Buddha's Teachings**

Lord Buddha preached: 'We will have to find out the cause of sorrow and the way to escape from it. The desire for sensual enjoyment and clinging to earthly life is the cause of sorrow. If we can eradicate desire, all sorrows and pains will come to an end. We will enjoy Nirvana or eternal peace. Those who follow the Noble Eightfold Path strictly, viz., right opinion, right resolve, right speech, right conduct, right employment, right exertion, right thought and right self-concentration will be free from sorrow. This indeed, O mendicants, is that middle course which the Tathagata has thoroughly comprehended, which produces insight, which produces knowledge, which leads to calmness or serenity, to supernatural knowledge, to perfect Buddhahood, to Nirvana.

This again, indeed, O mendicants, is Samudaya, the Noble Truth of Suffering. Birth is painful, old age is painful, sickness is painful, association with unloved objects is painful, separation from loved objects is painful, the desire which one does not obtain, this is too painful -in short, the five elements of attachment to existence are painful. The five elements of attachment to earthly existence are form, sensation, perception, components and consciousness.

This again, indeed, O mendicants, is the truth of the cause of suffering. It is that thirst which leads to renewed existence, connected with joy and passion, finding joy here and there, namely, thirst for sensual pleasure, and the instinctive thirst for existence. This again, indeed, O mendicants, is the noble truth of cessation of suffering, which is the cessation and total absence of desire for that very thirst, its abandonment, surrender, release from it and non-attachment to it. This again, indeed, O mendicants, is the noble truth of the course which leads to the cessation of suffering. This is verily the Noble Eightfold Path, viz., right opinion, etc.'

Remember, however, underscoring in essence What The Buddha Said, Dr. Walpola Rahula writes in his book 'What the Buddha Taught' (pp. 2-3), extrapolating from the Kalama Sutra (below) how far the Buddha went: 'He told the bhikkhus that

a disciple should examine even the Tathagata (Buddha) himself, so that he (the disciple) might be fully convinced of the true value of the teacher whom he followed.'

Do not go upon what has been acquired by repeated hearing; nor upon tradition; nor upon rumour; nor upon what is in a scripture; nor upon surmise; nor upon an axiom; nor upon specious reasoning; nor upon a bias towards a notion that has been pondered over; nor upon another's seeming ability; nor upon the consideration that 'The monk is your teacher.'

That's all we know about the historical life of Siddhartha, his mission, and the fate of his teachings. When we move into the Buddhist histories, the record becomes much more uncertain, particularly since the events of the Buddha's life vary from sect to sect.

What follows, however, is the most common outline of the nature of Siddhartha's life and philosophy. When Siddhartha Gautama was born, a seer predicted that he would either become a great king or he would save humanity. Fearing that his son would not follow in his footsteps, his father raised Siddhartha in a wealthy and pleasure-filled palace in order to shield his son from any experience of human misery or suffering. This, however, was a futile project, and when Siddhartha saw four sights: a sick man, a poor man, a beggar, and a corpse, he was filled with infinite sorrow for the suffering that humanity has to undergo.

After seeing these four things, Siddhartha then dedicated himself to finding a way to end human suffering. He abandoned his former way of life, including his wife and family, and dedicated himself to a life of extreme asceticism. So harsh was this way of life that he grew thin enough that he could feel his hands if he placed one on the small of his back and the other on his stomach. In this state of wretched concentration, in heroic but futile self-denial, he overheard a teacher speaking of music. If the strings on the instrument are set too tight, then the instrument will not play harmoniously.

If the strings are set too loose, the instrument will not produce music. Only the middle way, not too tight and not too loose, will produce harmonious music. This chance conversation changed his life overnight. The goal was not to live a completely worldly life, nor was it to live a life in complete denial of the physical body, but to live in a Middle Way. The way out of suffering was through concentration, and since the mind was connected to the body, denying the body would hamper concentration, just as overindulgence would distract one from concentration.

With this insight, Siddhartha began a program of intense yogic meditation beneath a pipal tree in Benares. At the end of this program, in a single night, Siddhartha came to understand all his previous lives and the entirety of the cycle of birth and rebirth, or *samsara*, and most importantly, figured out how to end the cycle of infinite sorrow. At this point, Siddhartha became the Buddha, or 'Awakened One.' Instead, however, of passing out of this cycle himself, he returned to the world of humanity in order to teach his new insights and help free humanity of their suffering.

His first teaching took place at the Deer Park in Benares. It was there that he expounded his 'Four Noble Truths,' which are the foundation of all Buddhist belief:

1. All human life is suffering (dhu $\ddot{u}$ ka).
2. All suffering is caused by human desire, particularly the desire that impermanent things be permanent.
3. Human suffering can be ended by ending human desire.
4. Desire can be ended by following the 'Eightfold Noble Path': right understanding, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration.

From a metaphysical standpoint, these Noble Truths make up and derive from a single fundamental Truth (in Sanskrit, Dharma, and in Pali, Dhamma). The Buddhist Dharma is based on the idea that everything in the universe is causally linked. All things are composite things, that is, they are composed of several elements. Because all things are composite, they are all transitory, for the elements come together and then fall apart. It is this transience that causes human beings to sorrow and to suffer. We live in a body, which is a composite thing, but that body decays, sickens, and eventually dies, though we wish it to do otherwise. Since everything is transient, that means that there can be no eternal soul either in the self or in the universe. This, then, is the eternal truth of the world: everything is transitory, sorrowful, and soulless—the three-fold character of the world.

As pessimistic as this sounds, the philosophy of Siddhartha Gautama is a kind of therapy. In fact, classifying it in Western terms is impossible. We think of Buddhism as a religion, which it unquestionably became, but Siddhartha was less concerned with theology or ritual or prayer as he was with providing a tool for individuals to use to escape suffering. The goal of this method, the Eightfold Noble Path, is the elimination of one's desires and one's attachment to one's self. Once one has understood correctly the nature of the universe (Right Understanding) and devoted one's life to selfless and altruistic actions (Right Action) and, finally, by losing all sense of one's self and by losing all one's desires, one then passes into a state called Nirvana (in Pali, Nibbana). The word means 'snuffed out' in the way a fire is snuffed out or extinguished. At this point, the self no longer exists. It is not folded into a higher reality nor is it transported to a land of bliss, it simply ceases to exist. This is the state that the Buddha passed into at his death.

Like Jainism, then, Buddhism centrally concerns the problem of the eternal birth and rebirth of the human soul. Unlike Jainism, Buddhism in its original form does not posit some transcendent alternative as a goal. In fact, Buddhism in its original form held that the soul actually died when the body died. How, then, could a soul pass from body to body? What passed from body to body was a chain of causes set in motion by each soul; the Buddhist philosopher Nag $\ddot{u}$ sa said it was like a flame passing from candle to candle. The individual, in snuffing out the self, brings those chain of causes to an end.

A large part of the program prescribed by Buddha involved selflessness in the world. Buddhism represents one of the most humane and advanced moral systems in the ancient world. The first steps on the road to Nirvana were to focus one's actions on doing good to others. In this way one could lose the illusion that one is a unique self. The Buddhist scriptures disapprove of violence, meat-eating, animal sacrifice, and war. Buddha enjoined on his followers four moral imperatives: friendliness, compassion, joy, and equanimity, the 'Four Cardinal Virtues.'

This is the philosophy that Buddha left the world. In the years following his death, the teachings began to slowly develop into various sects. Buddhism became so fragmented that barely one hundred years after the death of Siddhartha, a council of Buddhists was called to straighten out the differences. The earliest forms of Buddhism, which are now only practiced by a small minority, are called Theravada, or 'The Teachings of the Elders.'

### **Life Of Buddha:**

#### *Witnessing Suffering*

The following excerpts about the life of Buddha are taken from Geshe Kelsang Gyatso's book, *Introduction to Buddhism*: As the young prince grew up he mastered all the traditional arts and sciences without needing any instruction. He knew sixty-four different languages, each with their own alphabet, and he was also very skilled at mathematics. He once told his father that he could count all the atoms in the world in the time it takes to draw a single breath.

Although he did not need to study, he did so to please his father and to benefit others. At his father's request he joined a school where, in addition to various academic subjects, he became skilled at sports such as martial arts and archery. The prince would take every opportunity to convey spiritual meanings and to encourage others to follow spiritual paths.

At one time, when he was taking part in an archery contest, he declared, 'With the bow of meditative concentration I will fire the arrow of wisdom and kill the tiger of ignorance in living beings.' He then released the arrow and it flew straight through five iron tigers and seven trees before disappearing into the earth! By witnessing demonstrations such as this, thousands of people developed faith in the prince. Sometimes Prince Siddhartha would go into the capital city of his father's kingdom to see how the people lived.

During these visits he came into contact with many old people and sick people, and on one occasion he saw a corpse. These encounters left a deep impression on his mind and led him to realize that all living beings without exception have to experience the sufferings of birth, sickness, ageing and death. Because he understood the laws of reincarnation he also realized that they experience these sufferings not just once, but again and again, in life after life without cessation.

Seeing how all living beings are trapped in this vicious circle of suffering he



felt deep compassion for them, and he developed a sincere wish to free all of them from their suffering. Realizing that only a fully enlightened Buddha has the wisdom and the power to help all living beings in this way, he resolved to leave the palace and retire to the solitude of the forest where he would engage in profound meditation until he attained enlightenment.

#### *Ordaining as a Monk*

The following excerpts about the life of Buddha are taken from Geshe Kelsang Gyatso's book, *Introduction to Buddhism*: When the people of the Shakya kingdom realized that the prince intended to leave the palace they requested the king to arrange a marriage for him in the hope that this would cause him to change his mind. The king agreed and soon found him a suitable bride, the daughter of a respected Shakya family, called Yasodhara.

Prince Siddhartha, however, had no attachment to worldly pleasures because he realized that objects of attachment are like poisonous flowers, which initially appear to be attractive but eventually give rise to great pain. His resolve to leave the palace and to attain enlightenment remained unchanged, but to fulfil his father's wishes and to bring temporary benefit to the Shakya people, he agreed to marry Yasodhara. However, even though he remained in the palace as a royal prince, he devoted all his time and energy to serving the Shakya people in whatever way he could.

When he was twenty-nine years old, the prince had a vision in which all the Buddhas of the ten directions appeared to him and spoke in unison saying, 'Previously you resolved to become a Conqueror Buddha so that you could help all living beings trapped in the cycle of suffering. Now is the time for you to accomplish this.' The prince went immediately to his parents and told them of his intention: 'I wish to retire to a peaceful place in the forest where I can engage in deep meditation and quickly attain full enlightenment. Once I have attained enlightenment I shall be able to repay the kindness of all living beings, and especially the great kindness that you have shown me. Therefore I request your permission to leave the palace.'

When his parents heard this they were shocked, and the king refused to grant his permission. Prince Siddhartha said to his father 'Father, if you can give me permanent freedom from the sufferings of birth, sickness, ageing and death I shall stay in the palace; but if you cannot I must leave and make my human life meaningful.'

The king tried all means to prevent his son from leaving the palace. In the hope that the prince might change his mind, he surrounded him with a retinue of beautiful women, dancers, singer, and musicians, who day and night used their charms to please him; and in case the prince might attempt a secret escape he posted guards around the palace walls.

However, the prince's determination to leave the palace and enter a life of meditation could not be shaken. One night he used his miracle powers to send the

guards and attendants into a deep sleep while he made his escape from the palace with the help of a trusted aide. After they had travelled about six miles, the prince dismounted from his horse and bade farewell to his aide. He then cut off his hair and threw it into the sky, where it was caught by the gods of the Land of the Thirty-three Heavens. One of the gods then offered the prince the saffron robes of a religious mendicant. The prince accepted these and gave his royal garments to the god in exchange. In this way he ordained himself as a monk.

### **Attaining Enlightenment**

The following excerpts about the life of Buddha are taken from Geshe Kelsang Gyatso's book, *Introduction to Buddhism*: Siddhartha then made his way to a place near Bodh Gaya in India, where he found a suitable site for meditation. There he remained, emphasizing a meditation called 'space-like concentration on the Dharmakaya' in which he focused single-pointedly on the ultimate nature of all phenomena.

After training in this meditation for six years he realized that he was very close to attaining full enlightenment, and so he walked to Bodh Gaya where, on the full moon day of the fourth month of the lunar calendar, he seated himself beneath the Bodhi Tree in the meditation posture and vowed not to rise from meditation until he had attained perfect enlightenment. With this determination he entered the space-like concentration on the Dharmakaya.

As dusk fell, Devaputra Mara, the chief of all the demons, or maras, in this world, tried to disturb Siddhartha's concentration by conjuring up many fearful apparitions. He manifested hosts of terrifying demons, some throwing spears, some firing arrows, some trying to burn him with fire, and some hurling boulders and even mountains at him. Through the force of his concentration, the weapons, rocks, and mountains appeared to him as a rain of fragrant flowers, and the raging fires became like offerings of rainbow lights.

Seeing that Siddhartha could not be frightened into abandoning his meditation, Devaputra Mara tried instead to distract him by manifesting countless beautiful women, but Siddhartha responded by developing even deeper concentration. In this way he triumphed over all the demons of this world, which is why he subsequently became known as a 'Conqueror Buddha.'

Siddhartha then continued with his meditation until dawn, when he attained the *varja*-like concentration. With this concentration, which is the very last mind of a limited being, he removed the final veils of ignorance from his mind and in the next moment became a Buddha, a fully enlightened being.

### **Training The Mind**

Do not rely upon other conditions -In the practice of training the mind, we rely upon our own inner strength rather than upon external conditions. We do not need

to wait for better conditions before starting to practise, because we can transform any circumstances, whether good or bad, into the path to liberation and enlightenment. If we wait until we find perfect conditions, we will never begin our study and practice of Dharma.

Moreover, if we are preoccupied with creating perfect external conditions, we will never find the time to meditate because we will be too busy trying to fulfil our insatiable desires. For example, we may have a very agreeable partner, but because of our discontented mind still look around for someone else, or we may have a good car, but still want a bigger and more expensive model. Again, our present job may be very good, but out of discontent we still want a better one. If we pursue all our desires, there will be little or no time for Dharma practice.

Apply the principal practice at this time -At the moment we have a precious human life, but it is uncertain how long it will last. We should think, 'Since it would be a great tragedy to waste this rare opportunity, I must use it in a meaningful way.' It is pointless to work just for material wealth.

Even if we were to become very rich, we would still have to experience the sufferings of samsara. There are many wealthy people who have great problems and worries. We should think: The greatest purpose of this life is to provide a means for attaining liberation and enlightenment. The only way to attain these is by practising Dharma. Among Dharma practices, the supreme practice is training the mind. Therefore, I must practise training the mind now.

### **The Early Kagyu Patriarchs In India And Tibet**

'One instant with the guru is worth aeons of perfection-stage meditation' -Naropa

#### **Mahasiddha Naropa**

Naropa's life is very reminiscent of the twelve stages of the life of the Buddha. A bodhisattva of the highest, i.e. tenth, level, the future Naropa realised that the time had come to enter the human life that would bring him to full enlightenment. In the clarity of his meditation, he could see his future father, the Buddhist king Santivarman, who longed for a son and who himself had some physical signs of an enlightened being. His future mother dreamt of voidness and bliss inseparable and of light filling the entire country. Some time later, Naropa was born, his body bearing the marks of a future Buddha. The earth shook, many rainbows appeared and thunder rumbled. It was approximately the year 1016, in Bengal.

At the age of eight, disgusted by worldliness, he went to study dharma in Kashmir. By eleven, he had become a brilliant scholar. Returning to his country, the erudite prince taught Buddhist ethics to his people. His desireless mind was devoted to Buddhism and quite content. However, at the age of seventeen, he was virtually forced into marriage by his parents, who were anxious for an heir. His wife became his disciple and at the age of twenty-five he definitively renounced the world and

became a novice monk and, at twenty-one, a bhikkhu. The former royal child prodigy studied at Pullahari monastery and eventually his renown led to his becoming abbot of the great Nalanda monastery. His personal radiance inspired many people onto the path. He was the ideal abbot.

However, after some eight years he had a vision of a leprous old hag 'with 37 ugly features' who informed him that she was saddened because he only understood the teachings intellectually, not really. He realised that he was seeing the reflection of his own 37 worldly impurities, and declared: 'Samsara is to see fault in others'

He knew it was time to leave all and set out to find his guru, to complete his enlightenment. Despite the long entreaties of everyone he left Nalanda at the age of 42. There followed a long series of trials, in which he constantly met strange phenomena, symbolic of his own remaining blockages due to preconceived ideas about ultimate reality. These were often vivid and painful learning processes, representing the untying of karmic knots. In each of these episodes, he glimpsed brief visions of his guru, pointing out his mistakes. In fact, in one form or another, his guru Tilopa had been with him ever since he had seen the old leper woman, and at the end of these first trials, they met properly.

The first real teaching that Naropa received from Tilopa consisted of the latter saying nothing but, in a powerful dialogue of minds, showing twelve symbolic acts, each of which Naropa interpreted correctly. Then Tilopa gave him empowerments and personal teachings, including one special instruction, preparing the ground for what was to follow: 'Don't look for bliss, or its opposite'.

Then followed the twelve main teachings. Each of these shows a profound contact between Naropa and Tilopa, which means, in reality, between Naropa and the purity of his own mind. Each starts with a painful trial, instigated by Tilopa, which reveals a defect in Naropa and for which a teaching is given and then practised for about a year. For instance, in the first trial, Tilopa instructs Naropa to climb up onto a temple roof and jump off it. Faithful Naropa does just this. His guru then heals his shattered body with his blessing and gives him the teachings known as the 'Wish-fulfilling Gem'. The twelve teachings, most of which have since become the core of the inner Kagyu transmission, were:

1. The 'wish-fulfilling gem': a very complete form of purification,
2. 'Same-taste', showing the presence of the enlightened essence with all and everything,
3. Commitment: maintaining a pure relationship (samaya) with one's guru, everything and everyone,
4. Tummo: purification of the subtle inner body of chakra and nadi,
5. Illusory body yoga: bringing wisdom into one's perception of reality,
6. Dream yoga: how to understand and master dreams, using them to purify karma and develop enlightened action,
7. Radiant light yoga,

8. Transference of consciousness, particularly at the time of death (powa),
9. Resurrection,
10. Great bliss yoga: control of sexual energy and realisation of the common essence of samsara and nirvana, of pain and happiness. It is on mastering this teaching that he received the name Naropa.
11. Mahamudra and
12. 'Transitory Phase' yoga (bar.do): teaching how to be enlightened in every phase of existence -life, death, after-death, etc.

Through mastering these twelve Naropa's mind became almost totally identical with the enlightened mind of his guru Tilopa, who then sent him away to meditate further and help all beings. Naropa did this for some time, performing many miracles, and eventually returned to Tilopa, who removed the last remaining traces of impurity in Naropa's mind -in particular the latter's feeling of a need to meditate -by revealing to him, in all its fullness, mind's innate purity since beginningless time. Naropa then declared: 'One need ask no more when the true nature is seen'.

Fully enlightened, he became known as a 'second Buddha' and wrought great benefit for many beings. In particular, Tilopa instructed him to bring Marpa, the Tibetan, to enlightenment. Through Naropa and Marpa, the father tantra, the Guhyasamaja, went to Tibet, as well as exceedingly pure transmissions of other tantras, such as that of Chakrasamvara.

Naropa passed away, literally, at Pullahari, his enlightened body fading back into voidness amid myriad rainbows and beautiful celestial music. His life was an intense example of the power of faith, faith being an essential quality for the swiftest path of mahamudra within Kagyu Buddhism. By perfectly following his guru's advice and maintaining his dedicated commitment, he finished his journey to enlightenment.

## **Marpa**

### *Marpa The Translator*

Marpa, born in 1012 in south central Tibet, was the first Tibetan patriarch of the Kagyu tradition -which is often called the Marpa Kagyu in his honour. He was also the first Patriarch who would reappear again and again in the lineage. Marpa is believed to have been the mahasiddhas Dombipa, Sri Simha and Darikapa in previous lives in India. In eighth century Tibet, he was the astrologer who chose the site of Samye monastery. Later he was reborn as Dharma Semang, one of Guru Rinpoche's secretaries, writer of terma and expert in wrathful practices.

Then he became Marpa, at the 11th century period of restoration of dharma, and subsequently other masters, including the famous Taranatha. In the Kagyu tradition, besides being Marpa he was also to become Drogon Rechen, to whom the first Karmapa handed his prediction letter, Yeshe Ö, the second Karmapa's disciple

who found the hidden land of Sari, the golden lineage holder Ratnabhadra, guru of the fourth Karmapa and Choji Gyaltsen, who was given the title 'Tai Situ' by the Chinese Emperor Yung Lo (Ch'eng Tsu) in the early fifteenth century. The incarnations have been known as Tai Situ ever since.

Marpa's determination was strong, even as a child. In order to acquire Buddhist teachings for his country, he made three journeys to India. This was no mean feat at the time, as the dangers and health risks of travel were great. To acquire for Tibet the good karma assuring that those teachings would be long-lasting, he put much energy into collecting offerings to take to Indian masters, on behalf of his people. In order to properly accomplish his task of acquiring and translating teachings, he spent three years in Nepal, acclimatising to humidity and heat as well as the lower altitude. While there, he learnt more than thirty Indian dialects.

His main teacher in India was Naropa. He spent sixteen years and seven months studying under his guidance, during which time he received the full transmission of all that Naropa had received from Tilopa. Furthermore, Naropa sent him to other gurus, especially Maitripa, Jnanagarbha, Kukuripa, and the wisdom dakini of Sosalring. He received each of their special dharma transmissions: the complete mind teachings of mahamudra, Guhyasamaja, Mahamaya and Dorje Denshi.

Although he could have received all of those lineages from Naropa himself, Naropa wanted him to go to the best specialists of the day in each practice, so that the teachings Marpa carried to Tibet would be as charged as possible with lineage blessing.

From Naropa himself he received the Hevajra tantra and Naropa's special Techniques -the essence of vajrayana taught him by Tilopa -and above all the full transmission of the Chakrasamvara tantra. Marpa not only learnt but practised and gained results in these and many other vajrayana teachings. In particular, Naropa helped Marpa to break through the conceptual blockages preventing his complete liberation and thereby brought him to total enlightenment.

In their oneness of enlightenment, he shared the vast treasury of his mind with Marpa. Naropa made Marpa his dharma regent for Tibet and entrusted him with the task of bringing a very exceptional being, Milarepa, to enlightenment. It is said that Naropa himself prostrated towards Tibet when Marpa told him of his disciple Milarepa.

Marpa had always hoped that his own son, Dharma Doday, would become his spiritual heir but Naropa informed him that this was not to be. The Kagyu tradition is not a spiritual succession based upon family dynasties, as other lineages in Tibet were in the past and, in part, still are. In fact, one of the reasons (besides that of his immense spiritual presence) why the second Karmapa was given prominence by the Chinese Emperor was because the Karmapa was self-recognised and could be born into any family. The Chinese empire of the time was tired of sending endless gifts to religious dynastic families, which were also too powerful for their liking.

After his three journeys and twenty-one years in India, Marpa spent the last years of his life firmly establishing in Tibet the teachings he had secured. He had four highly gifted disciples, each specialised in different domains. His main heir, who received everything from him, just as he himself from Naropa, was Jetsun Milarepa.

## Milarepa

### *The Great Yogi, Milarepa*

Milarepa's moving and inspiring life story is the most accessible of all the Tibetan biographies published to date. It stands as a gripping story in its own right and the reader is highly commended to it. He was born in 1052 into comfortable circumstances but, while still a child, saw the life of his immediate family shattered by the death of his father and subsequent takeover of the family assets by an avaricious uncle and aunt, who thereafter used Milarepa, his sister and his mother as slaves. Milarepa's mother patiently awaited his coming of age to reclaim the family land, house and wealth, but when the time came, this proved unsuccessful. The only way she could imagine the injustice being righted was for her son to learn magic and curse the relatives. She threatened suicide if Milarepa did not do as she asked.

Milarepa went away and fulfilled his mother's wishes. Magical demons conjured up by him destroyed his uncle's house during a feast, killing 25 members of his family. Milarepa let it be known that the nightmarish wrecking of their home was his work and threatened to do worse if his family's house and land were not restored. Despite the fear he had inspired, it was dangerous for Milarepa to remain in the area and so he returned to his teacher.

The latter was ageing and starting to regret the darker deeds that he and his disciples had wrought. He placed his hope in Milarepa, feeling that this determined and good-hearted young man might achieve both their salvation. He sent him to dharma teachers to learn virtue and, above all, purification of misdeeds. This eventually led Milarepa to meet Marpa.

Marpa gave the repentant mass murderer a rough time, insisting that he build a tower for him. Once built, he made him tear it down. This was repeated several times, with towers of different shapes. In the end, Marpa insisted on a great castle tower, eight stories high, before he would give Milarepa any formal teachings. This seemingly cruel exploitation was, in fact, his way of helping Milarepa purify the bad karma. Using one or two simple tools and his bare hands, Milarepa slaved until he was all but broken, physically and morally.

At one point, he even ran away in desperation, but never losing faith. In the end, after the hardest of all spiritual apprenticeships and with the tower almost completed, he was admitted among Marpa's students. He was given ordination and teachings and entered solitary retreat, where he meditated with a butter-lamp on his head, not being allowed to move until the lamp burnt out. He gained good results and Marpa eventu-

ally sent him to meditate in isolated caves and mountain fastnesses for many years.

Milarepa's diligence and faith were second to none. Through them, he achieved something exceedingly rare, almost unique: he achieved enlightenment in a single lifetime. Famous for his mastery of Naropa's six yogas, he performed many miracles such as flying through space, passing through rocks and living for months in the snows at some 5,000 metres sustained only by life-breath while wearing nought but a thin cotton cloth, hence his name. Mila was his family name and repa means someone clad in cotton. An itinerant hermit, he was the perfect example of the Buddhist mendicant yogi. His enlightened songs, one of the greatest treasures of Kagyu teaching, have been an inspiration for many people since their publication in English. He had one disciple (Gampopa) like the sun, one (Rechungpa) like the moon, twenty-five like stars and many thousand others.

## Gampopa

### *Gampopa, Father Of The Various Kagyu Traditions*

We have seen something of Gampopa in the samadhirajasutra chapter. This tenth-level bodhisattva was born, in central Tibet in 1079, as the son of a very wise doctor. As a teenager he completed his own medical training and gained proficiency in several meditation practices of the Nyingma tradition. In his early twenties he married and fathered a son and a daughter. However, his wife and both children died, having all caught an incurable disease sweeping the area. His wife made him promise to become a monk after her death and this he did.

He became the monk Precious Virtue and spent an intensive period of time travelling and studying under excellent teachers of mahayana Buddhist philosophy and vajrayana technique. In particular, he benefitted from the Khadampa teachings brought to Tibet by Atisa Dipankara. He could meditate comfortably for many days without moving or needing food or drink and his presence was one of great peace and finesse. However, he then started to have visions of a ragged yogi; visions which uplifted him to states he had never before experienced.

The increasing intensity of these visions caused him to leave everything behind and set off in search of the yogi, who by now he knew to be Milarepa. In a strange world where meditation experience intermingled indistinguishably with his perception of reality, he made his way through a series of highly-meaningful symbolic experiences until he eventually encountered his guru.

Milarepa had inner knowledge that Gampopa would be his future spiritual heir long before the latter's arrival and realised what a magnificent and virtuous being he was. Over the next years, in a relatively short period of time, Milarepa passed on all his teachings to him and supervised his progress with great love and care. He even gave him the ultimate initiation, into diligence, by showing him the hard skin and callosities on his bottom where he had sat meditating for months and years on end on



rocks in wild mountainsides until realisation was attained. When he had taught Precious Virtue all he could, he sent him to Mount Gampo, with instruction on how to meditate there. He told him the signs of achievement by which he would know that it was time to teach others and predicted that a great number of people would eventually gather there as his disciples.

The man of Mt Gampo -Gampopa -achieved his enlightenment there and soon many people came to seek his advice. He established the very first Tibetan Kagyu monastery there and taught dharma on all its levels, from the very basics through to vajrayana. By bringing the monastic training and the erudition of the Khadampas into the Kagyu transmission, he had fortified and broadened it, fulfilling in part Naropa's prophecy that it would go from strength to strength in its next generations. Gampopa had many eminent scholars and yogis among his disciples. The most renowned was His Holiness the First Karmapa, Dusum Khyenpa.

## SADDAM HUSSEIN IN HISTORY

THE CURRENT leader of Iraq is was born on April 28, 1937, in a small village of al-Auja near the town of Takrit. His early childhood was spent in a mud hut in a mostly Sunni Muslim part of Iraq, which is approximately (100) one-hundred miles north of Baghdad. Hussein's father, Hussein al-Majid, died or abandoned the family (according to who is reporting the story), within a short time of his birth. Accurate records are difficult to obtain in a country where Hussein's birthday is celebrated as a national holiday.

He was reared alone by his mother Subha, until she took a second husband, Ibrahim Hassan. Hassan, often said to have been brutal and a thief, was a sheep-herder by profession and enlisted Saddam in his ventures. According to a former personal secretary of Hussein, his step father abused Saddam and sent him to steal chicken and sheep to be sold. This pattern continued until 1947 when, at the age of ten, he was allowed to move in with his mother's brother, Khayrallah Tulfah, in Baghdad.

In Baghdad, Hussein began to learn more than reading and writing. His tutor, Khayrallah had been 'cashiered' from the Iraqi army for supporting a 'Pro-Nazi' coup attempt that failed. Khayrallah's bitterness towards the British and imperialism, soon was transferred to Saddam. In fact, some confidants of Hussein point to his relationship with Tulfah as a turning point in his political awareness. To demonstrate Tulfah's importance to Hussein, he was later made Mayor of Baghdad under the Hussein regime. Saddam finished intermediate school (roughly the equivalent of 9th Grade) at the age of sixteen, and attempted to be admitted to the prestigious Baghdad Military Academy.

Unfortunately, his poor grades prevented him from doing so, and he became more deeply involved in political matters. In 1956, he participated in a non-successful coup attempt against the monarchy of King Faisal II. In 1957, he joined the Baath party, a radical nationalist movement. In 1958, a non-Baathist group of army officers succeeded in overthrowing the King. The group was led by General Abdul Qassim. In 1959, Saddam and a group of Baathist supporters attempted to assassinate Gen. Qassim by a day-light machine-gun attack. The attack was unsuccessful, but it helped to place Hussein in a leadership position in the Baathist movement and furthered the process of nationalist political indoctrination. After the attack, in which Hussein is slightly wounded, he fled to Syria. From Syria, he went to Cairo, Egypt where he would spend the next four (4) years.

While receiving aid from Egypt, he finished high school at the age of twenty-

four and continued his political education. While in Egypt, he was arrested on at least two occasions for threatening a fellow student and chasing another down the street with a knife, both for political differences. In 1961, he entered Cairo University School of Law, but did not finish his studies there. In 1963, a group of Baathist army officers tortured and assassinated General Qassim. This was done on Iraqi television. They also mutilated many of Qassim's devotees and showed their bodies (in close up) on the nightly news for more than one night. Saddam, hearing the news, quickly rushed back to Iraq to become involved in the revolution. And involved, he was, as both an interrogator and torturer at the infamous 'Palace of the End', in the basement of the former palace of King Faisal.

According to reports by Hanna Batatu (a government reporter), Hussein rose quickly through the ranks, due to his extreme efficiency as a torturer. The Baathist party split in 1963 and Saddam had supported the 'winner' in the latest party struggle. He was appointed by Michel Aflaq to be a member of the Baath Regional Command. In 1964, Hussein was jailed by some 'rightist' military officers who opposed the Baathist takeover. Through other political influence provided by his older cousin, General Ahmad Hassan al-Bakr, Hussein became deputy Secretary-General of the Baathists in 1966.

In 1966, Hussein escaped from prison and set up a Baathist internal party security system known as the Jihaz Haneen. It was to serve as the continuation of his political and real rise to power in Iraq. In 1968, another major upheaval in Iraq gave Hussein the greatest opportunity for further advancement; his mentor, Gen. Bakr and the Baathist seized the government. Hussein was made Deputy Chairman of the Revolutionary Command Council, in charge of internal security.

At the age of thirty-one (31) he had acquired what could have been deemed the number two spot in the Baathist party. He would continue in the position for approximately the next ten years. During that time, he would continue to consolidate his power by appointing numerous family members to positions of authority in the Iraqi government. In his position of Deputy in Charge of Internal Security, he built an enormous security apparatus and had spies and informers everywhere in the circles of power in Iraq.

During this time, Hussein also began to accumulate the wealth and position that he so relished as a poor sheep-herder in the desert of al-Auja. He and his family, now firmly entrenched in the infrastructure of the country, began to control the country's oil and other industrial enterprises. With the help of his security network and several personal assassins, Hussein took control of many of the nation's leading businesses.

In 1978, Saddam had been working with other Arab nations to ostracize Egypt for its diplomatic initiative in resolving Israel/Arab questions. An ally, President Hafez al-Assad of Syria, almost became the undoing of Hussein's ascension. If a Syrian/Iraqi federation were formed against Egypt, Assad, not Hussein, would rise to a position of greater power in the relationship. President Bakr would

lead the federation with Assad as second in command. Hussein could not allow that to happen and began to urge the President to step down. Again with the help of his family and security apparatus, Hussein was able to accomplish his task.

On July 16, 1979, President Bakr resigned, officially due to health problems, but in reality a victim of Hussein's political in-fighting. Moving quickly to consolidate his power, he called a major Baathist meeting on July 22, 1979. During the meeting, various family members and other Hussein devotees urged that the party be 'cleansed'. Hussein then read a list of names and asked that they step outside. Once there, they are taken into custody.

A high-ranking member of the Revolutionary Command, the head of the labour unions, the leading Shiite member of the Command, and twenty (20) others are then systematically and personally killed by Hussein and his top party officials. During the next few days, reports indicate that as many as 450 other military officers, deputy prime ministers, and 'non-party faithful' were rounded up and killed. This purge insured Hussein's consolidation of power in Iraq.

In 1980, Iraq invaded Iran and conducted an eight year war against one of his nearest neighbours and the home of Shiite fundamentalist Muslims. Again, because it appeared that the Shiites could be a threat to his continued dictatorship, the Kurds (Iraqi minority) were sprayed with poison gas for participating with the Iranians in an attempted overthrow of his country. The war continued for eight years of brutality and even repression of Hussein's own countrymen (especially the Kurds).

In 1988, after millions being killed, Iraq and Iran conduct a cease-fire and ended the bloodshed. By 1984, as many as 1.5 million Iraqis were supporters of Hussein and the Baathists. He continued to enlarge his security apparatus and army. In insidious ways, the party apparatus formed numerous government agencies to control and manipulate the citizens of Iraq. A statistical analysis of the population indicated that as many as fifty per cent of the Iraqis or a member of their family were employed by the government or military. The party and the people have become one. Hussein's domination of the country is complete.

Even the war against Iran didn't end the peoples support for Hussein, although some small protests did dampen the population's support for the conflict with Iran. Ultimately however, the war with Iran only strengthened Hussein's resolve and, in some eyes, causes him to become a 'hero' of Arab nationalism. This brings us to the chapter of Hussein's life that has not been thoroughly researched and written. It involves the 1990, summer invasion of Kuwait over a dispute about oil prices and political control of the Persian Gulf. The subsequent United Nation Resolutions and United States intervention in the defence of Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and other nearby countries will undoubtedly impact on the history of Saddam Hussein.

Hussein has managed to survive the loss of a large portion of his army, a major psychological defeat, and control of the Northern and Southern part of Iraq, yet he continues in power in Iraq. His resilience is extraordinary, and so far he has managed to elude the allied powers, who would like to see him replaced as the leader

of a major Middle-Eastern country. One thing is sure, Hussein is a man who is filled with pride. He is firmly entrenched in the history and culture of Iraq.

If past history can serve as a guide, in regard to his future behaviour, one can expect that he will use all of his resources to exact revenge against those that defeated him. The most viable route for revenge, by Hussein and Iraq, is the conduct of terrorist operations. No one should discount his future involvement in actions against the United States or her allies.

### **Saddam Hussein And History 101**

As George Santayana cogently observed, 'Those who cannot remember the past are condemned to repeat it.' Valid comparisons can certainly be made between ancient and modern societies - including Rome and the United States. It is also true that those who remember the past can deliberately attempt to repeat it, or at least to use recollections of the past to pursue modern objectives. This appears to be the case with Saddam Hussein, who has studied the history of ancient and medieval Iraq and apparently wishes to see it repeated.

Saddam has, on numerous occasions, called himself the 'successor' to two of the most famous figures from Iraq's history: the Neo-Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar II of the sixth century BCE, and the Moslem warrior Saladin of the 12th century. Nebuchadnezzar occupies a prominent place in the Hebrew Bible as the victorious conqueror of Jerusalem. In 586 BCE, he laid the city waste, destroyed Solomon's Temple, and exiled the Jews to Babylon. Saladin is familiar as a mighty warrior of the armies of Islam. After the Christian forces of the First Crusade captured Jerusalem in year 1099, he rallied the Islamic armies and recaptured the city less than 90 years later.

For the past few decades, Saddam has used these two figures in his propaganda. He has styled himself the successor to Saladin. Conveniently forgetting that Saladin was a Kurd, Saddam makes much of the fact that he and Saladin were born in the same little village of Tikrit. In July 1987, a colloquium on Saladin was held at Tikrit under the title, 'The Battle of Liberation - from Saladin to Saddam Hussein.' That same year, a Baghdad publisher produced a children's book entitled 'The Hero Saladin.' The cover showed a picture of Saddam Hussein, with sword-wielding horsemen in the background. After a brief account of Saladin's life, emphasizing his reconquest of Jerusalem, the rest of the booklet was devoted to Saddam Hussein, whom it called 'the noble and heroic Arab fighter Saladin II Saddam Hussein,' consistently referring to him thereafter as 'Saladin II.'

Saddam also portrays himself as the successor to Nebuchadnezzar. In 1979, he was quoted by his semi-official biographer as saying: 'Nebuchadnezzar stirs in me everything relating to pre-Islamic ancient history. And what is most important to me about Nebuchadnezzar is the link between the Arabs' abilities and the liberation of Palestine. Nebuchadnezzar was, after all, an Arab from Iraq, albeit ancient Iraq. ... That is why whenever I remember Nebuchadnezzar I like to remind the Arabs, Iraqis in particular, of their historical responsibilities. It is a burden that should... spur

them into action because of their history.'

Although Nebuchadnezzar was neither Arab nor Moslem, Saddam Hussein's 'Nebuchadnezzar Imperial Complex,' as one psychologist called it, has been remarkably consistent. In the late 1980s he promoted the Iraqi Arts Festival called 'From Nebuchadnezzar to Saddam Hussein.' He also had a replica of Nebuchadnezzar's war chariot built and had himself photographed standing in it. He ordered images of himself and Nebuchadnezzar beamed, side by side, into the night sky over Baghdad as part of a laser light show. He has spent millions rebuilding the ancient site of Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar's capital city, provoking fears among Christian fundamentalists who see this as one of the signs of the end times and the imminent approach of Armageddon.

There are other great military figures from Iraqi history that Saddam might have elected to emulate. Why not Sargon of Akkad, Hammurabi of Babylon, or Sennacherib and Assurbanipal of the Neo-Assyrian Empire, for example? Saddam has in fact compared himself to many other historical figures, but his preferred heroes remain Nebuchadnezzar and Saladin.

Why? A single common denominator links these two historical figures and distinguishes them from the other great figures of Iraq's past. Of all the Iraqi empire-builders - ancient, medieval, or modern - only Nebuchadnezzar and Saladin ever captured Jerusalem.

In February 2001, one day after Ariel Sharon was first elected prime minister of Israel, Saddam Hussein announced the formation of a 'Jerusalem Army,' consisting of seven million Iraqis who 'volunteered to liberate Palestine' from Israeli rule. In August 2001, the Associated Press reported that thousands of Iraqis had taken to the streets, waving guns and calling for the 'liberation of Palestine' under Hussein's leadership. Their banners read 'Here we come Saddam ... here we come Jerusalem.' And in February 2003, members of the 'Jerusalem Army' marched again in Mosul; official Iraqi sources claim that two million recruits have completed their training in the past two years.

Although analysts frequently dismiss such actions as mere propaganda in a 'fantasy drama staged by Saddam,' we who remember the past should recall that Nebuchadnezzar successfully laid waste to Jerusalem 2,500 years ago and Saladin captured it 800 years ago. Even if Saddam Hussein's 'Jerusalem Army' is more wishful thinking than serious threat, his stated intention to destroy Jerusalem - most probably with a Scud missile tipped with a chemical or biological weapon - cannot be ignored. Will he attempt to make history repeat itself? We shall probably know the answer soon enough.

### **Saddam Hussein On Writing History**

'We must not speak about the writing of history in isolation from current times and circumstances' Saddam Hussein's Pronouncement in discussing the Report of the National Educational Committee for the Correction of School Curriculum, 1975

It is only that several things should be taken into consideration in modern curriculums: age; the educational and scientific capabilities of the students and pupils; thus one does not say the same things - in terms of content and approach - to high school students as one would to elementary school students.

When we speak to young children, who have limited scientific understanding, we must speak about some political or historical issues that we wish for them to internalise, in the absolute without any qualifications. For example, when we speak of Arab unity we must not occupy the little student with details and to engage him in a discussion of whether we are indeed a single nation or not.

It is enough to speak of the Arab as one nation assuming that to be an absolute reality, with a brief summary about the role that colonialism played in dividing the (Arab) countries and nation in order to weaken it and maintain control over it. We should also portray the path to unity through struggle in a simplified form as well. Thus, when we speak about the Ba'ath Arab Socialist Party (the Party which brought Hussein to power, and that he leads) as a leading party, we should speak about it to the children as if it is an absolute reality.

As to the details of why and how it became a leading party then we can show that through a discussion about the accomplishments of the party, the role of the party in saving the Iraqi people, and through a discussion of the Revolution without fatiguing the students at this stage with complicated theoretical, philosophical or political analyses. This is especially the case with the generation that did not live through the period preceding the Revolution of 17-30 June, 1968 (which brought the Ba'ath to power).

Discussing the Revolution, and the Arab Ba'ath Socialist Party without speaking of the dark era that preceded the revolution - in social, political, economic, cultural and military terms - will not provide propose historical and objective context for understanding the Revolution. The June revolution is great because of the accomplishments it attained from 18-30 June 1968 until now; but its greatness appears greater when we understand what preceded the revolution. It is important to speak of the dark period which preceded the revolution in detail so that coming generations will understand the greatness of their revolution. We must avoid speaking in detail about matters that are constantly and rapidly changing because they will appear small in later stages.

Here I find it necessary to speak, educate and concentrate on the fact that Iraq is part of the Arab nation more than speaking about the Iraqi people being part of the Arab nation. In this manner we can achieve our goal without upsetting opposing nationalist tendencies amongst the other part of our people.

In our national education we must speak about self-rule (for the minorities). And when we address the subject of self-rule we must not get lost in too many details so as not to make the administrative structure of self a 'Chinese Wall' that separates the Arab from the Kurd in Iraq. For instance, when we speak about Iraqi folklore we do not see it necessary to speak about Kurdish folklore, and another that

is Arab and a third that is Turkish...etc. Rather, it should be presented simply as Iraqi folklore.

So we would say for example: this is a dance from the South of Iraq from al-Nassiriya (an Iraqi town), and this is a dance from al-Sulaymaniya (another city). Exaggerated actions to show that we care about local nationalisms (within Iraq) will cause immense harm in our short and long-term plans...To take for example our starting point, by way of imagining equality between the Arab and others, as saying that the Arab wears the 'iqaal (one type of headdress) and the Kurd wears laffat (another type of headdress) around the head...is a big mistake because this image will have negative psychological effects and will lead to dangerous ideological and political results. Perhaps there is someone who is purposely plotting to maintain a Chinese wall that separates our people psychologically and mentally...

When we speak about our people's nationalist sacrifices we must not limit our discourse to talking about political and military actions. Rather we need to point to the big sacrifices that the citizens have done, and continue to perform, in the field of production and other activities in order to build up the nation. He who endangers himself to save a machine is worthy of mentioning with pride in order to strengthen the tendency to consider work a basic tenet in the honour and progress of the nation... and to strengthen the tendency among the sons of our people to safeguard the socialist property.

### **Saddam Hussein:**

#### **On Religion And Tradition**

When we speak of religion and tradition with pride we must understand that our philosophy is not tradition and religion per se. Our philosophy is what is expressed by our intellectual premises and the policies related to those. One of the central aspects of our society, and which influences our manners and traditions is the past with all that it contains of the traditions and laws of our life.

This is the same with religion. However, our ideology is not simply the result of all that the past and religion contain, but rather it is a total and advanced perspective on life, and is a total solution for its problems and stumbling blocks in order to propel it forward along the revolutionary path of progress... When religion and tradition form two basic and vital tributaries or supports for this fact then their influence will be vital to our ideology. Here I ask: Was nobility, truthfulness and honour to be found amongst the Arabs before Islam or not, and how were they before and after Islam, were they the same?

The answer is per force that the standards of nobility, truthfulness and honour...were found before Islam but they were not the same standards which emerged after Islam's arrival, for they changed as the society and its ideology changed...

Therefore, the standards of nobility, honour and all other social traditions and values are objective and ever-changing standards...and it appears relative within the context of an overall view of life.



The political ideas about these matters were discussed a long time ago by our Party, and if a problem has occurred now it is because it lies within the policies and its inability to properly reflect the Party's ideological position with regard to these matters.

Let me affirm once more our Party's and my profound conviction in relation to this subject: Our Party does not take a neutral stand between atheism and faith, but rather it is on the side of Faith, always, but it is not a religious party and should not be so...

Providing profound and radical solutions for the social, political and economic problems of our people requires distancing ourselves from generalizations, and moving toward creating specific goals and solutions...It also requires diagnosing the enemies of the revolution and their alliances at every stage of the struggle...One of the basic things needed to lead the people and to confront and vanquish his enemies in a permanent manner is to place the enemy in a position of disadvantage and to clearly demarcate the two positions...

Therefore, which method should be used against religious and sectarian fanaticism at this stage? Should we engage those people who present the issue of religion and its practices in a deviant and wrong manner, in order to debate them and convince them of their error and subsequently lead them to the correct path...or should we distinguish ourselves from them through a complete discussion of our profound and unshakable vision? Some opposing forces have begun to use religion for political purposes; therefore you must not use religion for political purposes and must not confront them in a direct and traditional manner.

When some reactionary quarters act in a provocative manner against the Revolution under the cover of religious beliefs then they are, through the influence of colonialism, seek to drag the Revolution and its institutions to interfere in religious matters in a manner that will anger some popular groups that are normally part of the Revolution. The purpose of some of these suspect elements is to push some party members and government officials to behave in undisciplined and unaware manner...It seeks to isolate the Revolution from the its masses and to embroil it in labyrinthine trenches so as to make it difficult to distinguish between friend and foe and causing the Revolution's rifle to hit a friend or son of the Revolution instead of its enemies...

These reactionary quarters, and that are most likely directed by some foreigner, realize that they cannot gain the sympathy of the people through establishing a political party that can compete with the Arab Ba'ath Socialist Party. Thus, it seeks to attract some people by calling for the performance of certain religious rituals in a particular manner, and then seeking at a later time to transform these rituals into political loyalties opposed to the Revolution.... Therefore, what is required of us is to be opposed to the politicisation of religion...and to oppose the insertion of the Revolution into religious matters and to return to the foundation of our ideology.

\*\*\*

Those who are incapable of innovation are the people who imitate and copy others, and in our society there are two types of imitators: One type that imitates the old and they are the reactionaries and right-wingers, and another type that copies from the new, and some of them form political parties that borrow the experiences and solutions of other nations, including their position with regard to religion. But we have the capacity to innovate and to produce creative and advanced solutions, and life requires dealing with progressive ideas and methods. Thus even if everyone had the same belief and way of expressing it...it is still would not be possible to contain our approaches and dealings in everyday within the narrowly defined boundary of religion and religious law. This is the case because the problems of our modern society, and that we have to deal with, are profoundly different from the problems that were faced during the early Islamic era. (Speech by Saddam Hussein, 8/11/1977)

### **The Curious History Of The USA And Saddam Hussein**

The curious history of the US and Saddam Hussein 24 April 2003. A World to Win News Service. The following is reprinted from the 20 April issue of the Revolutionary Worker weekly newspaper ([www.rwor.org](http://www.rwor.org)). The US invaders and occupiers claim to be the great deliverers of salvation for the Iraqi people from the despotic rule of Saddam Hussein. US officials loudly denounce Hussein's crimes, and the US media obediently takes up this theme. But there is one fact that people will not hear from the mouths of Bush, Rumsfeld, and other US spokesmen - it was the US itself that was behind the rise to power of Hussein's Ba'ath Party and that backed its brutal rule for many years.

As the US government tries to justify its imperialist power move in the Persian Gulf as a 'liberation' of Iraq, it's more important than ever for people - especially here in the US - to understand the real history of the US relationship with Saddam Hussein. The following is a brief sketch of that history, up to the 1991 Gulf War.

\*\*\*

**1944:**

US State Department memo refers to Middle Eastern oil as 'a stupendous source of strategic power, and one of the greatest material prizes in world history.' During US-British negotiations over control of Middle Eastern oil, President Roosevelt tells the British ambassador, 'Persian oil is yours. We share the oil of Iraq and Kuwait. As for Saudi Arabian oil, it's ours.' On August 8, 1944, the Anglo-American Petroleum Agreement is signed, splitting Middle Eastern oil between the US and Britain.

**1960:**

US works to covertly undermine the government of Iraq by supporting anti-government Kurdish rebels and by attempting, unsuccessfully, to assassinate Iraq's leader, Abdul Karim Qassim, an army general who had restored relations with the Soviet Union and lifted the ban on Iraq's Communist Party.

**1963:**

US supports a coup by the Ba'ath party to overthrow the Qassim regime, including by giving the Ba'ath names of communists to murder. Soon after the US-backed coup, Saddam Hussein becomes the head of the Ba'ath party. According to one account, 'Armed with the names and whereabouts of individual communists, the national guards carried out summary executions. Communists held in detention...were dragged out of prison and shot without a hearing.. (B) By the end of the rule of the Ba'ath, its terror campaign had claimed the lives of an estimated 3,000 to 5,000 communists.'

**1973-1975:**

US supports Kurdish rebels in Iraq in order to strengthen Iran and weaken the then pro-Soviet Iraqi regime. When Iran and Iraq cut a deal, the US withdraws support from the Kurdish rebels, denies the Kurds refuge in Iran, and stands by while the Iraqi government kills many Kurdish people.

**Spring-Summer 1980:**

The US government is greatly shocked by the downfall of its key puppet in the Persian Gulf, the Shah of Iran, in 1979 and the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan. As part of its counterattack, the US begins to prod Saddam Hussein to invade Iran. In spring 1980 Zbigniew Brzezinski, US President Carter's national security advisor, signals the U.S.'s willingness to work with Iraq in a meeting with Saddam Hussein in Jordan two months before Iraq invades Iran. Brzezinski assures Saddam Hussein that the US would not oppose the Iraq takeover of southwest Iran. The pro-US regimes of Kuwait and Egypt also urge Iraq to invade.

**September 1980:**

Iraq invades Iran with tacit US support, starting a bloody eight-year war. The US supports both sides in the war 'tilting' to one side or another at various times - in order to prolong the war and weaken both sides, while trying to draw both countries into the US orbit. The US opposes UN action against the invasion, removes Iraq from its list of 'terrorist' nations, allows US arms to be transferred to Iraq, provides Iraq with intelligence on Iran, economic aid, and political support, and encourages its Gulf allies to lend Iraq over \$30 billion for its war effort. Meanwhile, the US also provides Iran with arms. The US military provides important intelligence information on Iran and advice on strike plans to the Iraqi military - while fully aware that the Iraqi regime had chemical weapons in its arsenal and was prepared to use them.

**1983:**

US President Ronald Reagan sends Donald Rumsfeld as a special representative to Baghdad to firm up relations with Saddam Hussein.

**1988:**

The Iraqi regime launches poison-gas attacks on Kurdish villages in northern Iraq, killing thousands of Kurds. The US increases its support for the Iraqi regime.

**July 1990:**

April Glaspie, US ambassador to Iraq, meets with Saddam Hussein, who reveals Iraq's intention to take military action against Kuwait for overproducing its oil quota, slant drilling for oil in Iraqi territory, and encroaching on Iraqi territory - seriously harming war-weakened Iraq. Glaspie replies, 'We have no opinion on the Arab-Arab conflicts, like your border disagreement with Kuwait.' When Iraq invades Kuwait, the US imperialists turn on their man, Saddam Hussein - seizing the moment to assert US hegemony in the post-Soviet world and strengthen their grip on the Persian Gulf. The US condemns Iraq, rejects a diplomatic settlement, imposes sanctions, and prepares for an all-out military assault on Iraq. After a six-month military buildup, the US-led coalition launches Operation Desert Storm.

## OSAMA BIN LADEN IN HISTORY

OSAMA bin Laden is largely regarded as the world's leading terrorist by most intelligence organisations. He is actually Saudi Arabian, but currently lives in Afghanistan where he is shielded, protected, and somewhat supported by Afghanistan's ruling fundamentalist Taliban government.

Bin Laden moved to Afghanistan in 1979 to help the fight against the invading Russian forces. He formed a group called the Maktab al-Khidimat, which included Muslims from all over the world, including Egypt, Lebanon, and Turkey, among others. These people viewed the war as an Islamic crusade, or jihad, against the evil Russian communists. It wasn't simply a nationalist struggle for Afghanistan's freedom. Ironically, he and his troops were most likely trained and supplied by American and British special forces and intelligence organisations wanting to increase instability in the region and relishing the idea of giving the Russians a bloody nose.

Ultimately, the superior Russian army was beaten and forced to withdraw in 1989. It was a devastating conflict for the Russians. President Gorbachev called it 'Russia's bleeding wound', and it has sometimes been seen as Russia's Vietnam. Once the Russians had left, a power vacuum was created in Afghanistan and the various tribes and Mujahidin factions fell into civil conflict. The Taliban took control of Afghanistan in 1996, and now control the capital Kabul and two-thirds of Afghanistan. However, they are not recognised on a worldwide scale as a legitimate ruling government.

Bin Laden returned to Saudi Arabia in 1991. His family is very wealthy and he worked in their construction company. However, he despises western influences in Saudi Arabia and was expelled for anti-government activity. Since then, he has moved around frequently, but with his name increasingly being associated with worldwide terrorist atrocities and increasing US and international desire to get their hands on him, he returned to Afghanistan in 1996. It is a country he knows very well. There, he is essentially regarded as a hero and the Taliban government was willing to shelter him when no other country would have gone near him with a hundred-foot barge pole. The Afghans, particularly the Taliban, have no love for the West either and hate the Americans for abandoning them once the Russians had been defeated.

Osama bin Laden's terrorist organisation is known as Al-Qaeda. It was formed out of his hatred of all things western, the increasing western influence, and its interference in the Muslim world. His specific anger towards America stems from the permanent presence of US soldiers who have been in his native Saudi Arabia since the Gulf War. He has much support with organisations in over 60 countries, including Britain.

The BBC believes he can summon up to 3,000 fighters. It was in 1996 and once again in 1998 when bin Laden issued a fatwah or religious order, for all Muslims to kill Americans no matter where they were. It is such actions that seem to encompass all Muslims and that has created much resentment and retaliation this week against anyone following the Muslim faith. However, the majority of Muslims do distance themselves and certainly do not support or condone the actions of this man. Bin Laden's group has been linked with the 1993 bombing of the World Trade Centre, the 1996 killing of 19 US soldiers in Saudi Arabia, the 1998 bombing of the US embassies in Kenya and Tanzania, and the bomb attack in 2000 on the USS Cole while at anchor in Yemen.

The USA has attempted to strike back at bin Laden, and the CIA claims to have thwarted many of his terrorist operations. Nearly 100 of his operatives have been arrested around the world since 1998. The Americans have even launched a cruise missile attack against bin Laden, although this failed quite spectacularly. He is out there. He keeps coming back, although life is not apparently pleasant for him as he is always on the run. It is believed he has been in hiding since the New York attacks, and is believed to have headed for the hills, possibly in hideouts that were originally created with CIA assistance.

The question still remains. Could Osama Bin Laden have been responsible for such a well organised atrocity as seen on the 11th September? He is certainly the prime suspect, although as yet we do not have conclusive proof it was him. The level of organisation, wealth, and planning needed to pull off something like this had to be immense and thus eliminates most of the smaller terrorist organisations spread around the world. Bin Laden would have had the wealth, the organisation, and certainly the desire and past history to do something like this. It has been estimated that he does have a personal wealth amounting to the tens of millions of dollars that he uses to fund the actions of extremist Muslims all over the world. More recently, it has become apparent that he does have family in the Charlestown area of Boston. If we eliminate the idea that the attack was carried out by a nation such as Iraq, it is clear that the only likely suspect left is bin Laden.

## **Osama Bin Laden:**

### **History Of Confrontation**

Saudi exile Osama bin Laden first achieved prominence in Afghanistan when as a devout Muslim he took part in the 1980s in an insurgency against the invading Soviet Union. It was led by Afghan rebels, financially aided by the United States. He is said to have received considerable money during the 10-year battle from the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency.

In 1989, when the fighting ended with Moscow's withdrawal, Osama bin Laden returned home to Saudi Arabia. There, he began a confrontation with the Saudi monarchy over its decision to invite American troops into their Kingdom. Saudi Arabia embraces two of Islam's most holy sites, Mecca and Medina. Many

Muslims believe that Saudi Arabia, where the prophet Mohammed lived and died, is a sacred land that should be off-limits to all non-believers.

In 1990, the United States sent military personnel and equipment to Saudi Arabia in response to Iraq's invasion of Kuwait. The Persian Gulf War soon followed. Hounded by Saudi intelligence officials, who arrested him for his criticism of the monarchy, Osama Bin Laden fled to Sudan in 1992, where the hard-line Islamist Hasan Turabi was in power. There, bin Laden's Al-Qaida organization was born. Since then, a string of terrorist attacks against U.S. targets have occurred at regular intervals. They include the 1993 bombing of the World Trade Centre, the 1996 bombing of U.S. military housing in Saudi Arabia, the 1999 bombings of two U.S. embassies in East Africa.

He praised last year's suicide bombing of the USS Cole, off the coast of Yemen. Osama bin Laden has never claimed responsibility for any of these attacks, but has been accused of playing a role in most of them. He was indicted by a U-S court for the embassy attacks. The United Nations slapped sanctions against the Taliban for not handing him over for trial. Today he is the top suspect in Tuesday's terrorist attacks in New York, Washington, and Pennsylvania.

### **Who Is Osama Bin Laden?**

Wealthy Saudi exile is a suspected terrorist mastermind. Alleged U.S. Embassy terrorist Osama bin Laden. (Source/FBI) Considered the world's foremost terrorist, Osama Bin Laden is the leading suspect in the horrific Sept. 11, 2001, attacks that destroyed the World Trade Centre, damaged part of the Pentagon, and resulted in a plane crash in Pennsylvania. Although he has denied involvement in the attack, he referred to it, through an aid, as 'punishment from Allah.'

Bin Laden has been implicated in a string of deadly attacks on the United States and its allies: the 1993 World Trade Centre bombing; the 1998 bombings at the U.S. embassies in Kenya and Tanzania that killed more than 200; and the 2000 bombing of the USS Cole in Yemen. Bin Laden also claims responsibility for a 1993 gunfight that killed 18 U.S. troops in Somalia and the 1996 bombing of the Khobar military complex in Saudi Arabia that left 19 U.S. soldiers dead.

### **Born With A Silver Spoon**

Bin Laden was born in Saudi Arabia around 1957 to a father of Yemeni origins and a Syrian mother. His father, Mohammed bin Laden, founded a construction company and with royal patronage became a billionaire. The company's connections won it such important commissions as rebuilding mosques in the holy cities of Mecca and Medina.

Mohammed bin Laden took numerous wives and fathered about 50 children. Osama was the 17th son, the only born to a later wife. In a society where status within a family is highly important, bin Laden would therefore have been of relatively low rank. Bin Laden studied management and economics at King Abdul Aziz University

in Jeddah, Saudi Arabia, coming under the influence of religious teachers who introduced him to the wider world of Islamic politics.

The 1979 Soviet invasion of Afghanistan galvanized bin Laden. He supported the Afghan resistance, which became a jihad, or holy war. Ironically, the U.S. became a major supporter of the Afghan resistance, or mujahideen, working with Saudi Arabia and Pakistan to set up Islamic schools in Pakistan for Afghan refugees. These schools later evolved into virtual training centres for Islamic radicals.

By the mid-1980s, bin Laden had moved to Afghanistan, where he established an organization, *Maktab al-Khidimat* (MAK), to recruit Islamic soldiers from around the world who later form the basis of an international network. The MAK maintained recruiting offices in Detroit and Brooklyn in the 1980s.

The Taliban, the former rulers of Afghanistan, arose from the religious schools set up during the mujahideen's war against the Soviet invasion. After the Soviet army withdrew in 1989, fighting erupted among mujahideen factions. In response to the chaos, the fundamentalist Taliban was formed and within two years it captured most of the country. The Taliban gave bin Laden sanctuary in 1996.

After the Soviet withdrawal in 1989, bin Laden returned to Saudi Arabia and worked in his family's construction business. He founded an organization to help veterans of the Afghan war, many of whom went on to fight in Bosnia, Chechnya, Somalia, and the Philippines. Scholars have suggested these loosely connected bands of seasoned soldiers, ready to fight for Islamic causes, form the basis of bin Laden's current support.

In 1990, in response to the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait, the Saudi government allowed American troops to be stationed in Saudi Arabia. Bin Laden was incensed that non-believers (American soldiers) were stationed in the birthplace of Islam. He also charged the Saudi regime with deviating from true Islam.

Bin Laden was expelled from Saudi Arabia in 1991 because of his anti-government activities. He eventually wound up in Sudan, where he worked with Egyptian radical groups in exile.

### **Anti-U.S. Attacks**

In 1992 bin Laden claimed responsibility for attempting to bomb U.S. soldiers in Yemen and for attacking U.S. troops in Somalia the following year. In 1994 pressure from the U.S. and Saudi Arabia prompted Sudan to expel bin Laden, and he returned to Afghanistan.

In 1998 bin Laden called for all Americans and Jews, including children, to be killed. He has since been accused of increasing his terrorist activities, such as the 1998 bombings at the U.S. embassies in Kenya and Tanzania. The date, Aug. 7, was the anniversary of the deployment of U.S. troops to Saudi Arabia.

U.S. cruise missile attacks against targets in the Sudan and Afghanistan in Aug. 1998 are not believed to have seriously hampered bin Laden's network. Bin Laden continues to call for the destruction of the U.S., Israel, and the Saudi monarchy, stat-



ing that with these obstacles removed, Islam's three holiest sites, Mecca, Medina, and Jerusalem, would then be liberated.

### **International Terrorist Network**

Yet, even as he is reviled in the West, bin Laden is a hero in parts of the Islamic world, according to intelligence reports. His organization is called al-Qaeda, 'the Base,' and has approximately 3,000 followers, which he funds with his estimated \$250 million fortune. Experts have said that bin Laden could represent a new trend in terrorism - privatization. Until his emergence, most large-scale terrorist organizations are believed to have been connected to governments. With his money and disciplined followers, however, bin Laden is believed to have the ability to launch even more devastating terrorist attacks. He has not denied that he is seeking nuclear or chemical weapons, saying that it is a religious duty to defend Islam.

Bin Laden has been disowned by most of his family, including a brother, Sheik Bakr Mohammed bin Laden, who has established scholarship funds at Harvard Law School, and the Harvard School of Design. In 1991 his Saudi citizenship was revoked.

### **Wanted: Dead Or Alive**

After the Sept. 11 attacks, the U.S. issued an ultimatum to Taliban-ruled Afghanistan to turn over bin Laden - this was just the last of several such demands made by the U.S. and the UN after bin Laden was implicated in the 1998 U.S. embassy bombings in East Africa (the U.S. also responded then by launching retaliatory missile attacks on Sudan and an al-Qaeda training camp in Afghanistan). Binding their fate to bin Laden's, the Taliban became the target of air strikes by the U.S. and Britain beginning in October 2002 that swiftly toppled the regime within two months. But Bin Laden, the object of the military campaign in Afghanistan, remained at large. He was believed to have fled to the mountainous region of Tora Bora, but the heavy U.S. bombing campaign that followed failed to vanquish him.

Since the attacks, Bin Laden has released several video tapes broadcast on Qatar's Al Jazeera network, the first of which praised the Sept. 11 hijackers, but stopped just short of claiming responsibility for them. In subsequent tapes, he threatened that more attacks against 'the infidel' will occur and warned that 'America will not live in peace.' Bin Laden's whereabouts remain elusive, but he is thought to be somewhere in Afghanistan or Pakistan. The FBI has placed a \$25 million bounty upon his head.

### **Al-Qaeda History:**

#### **September 30, 2001**

*Al-Qaeda Is a Sprawling, Hard-to*

In early 1995, at a remote camp in Afghanistan, a 21-year-old Tanzanian man prepared to begin a new life as a soldier of Islam. The young man, Khalfan Khamis

Mohamed, had just completed training in weapons, explosives and religious studies. But rather than being sent off on a mission by the radical group that had prepared him, Al Qaeda, Mr. Mohamed was simply sent home.

It was three more years before Mr. Mohamed got his call. Four months after that, he helped bomb the United States Embassy in Dar es Salaam, capital of Tanzania, one of two attacks in East Africa that day that killed 224 people and were attributed squarely to Al Qaeda and its founder, Osama bin Laden.

When Mr. Mohamed was captured in 1999, however, he told the F.B.I. that he was not really sure what Al Qaeda was, and that he had learned only through news reports who had sponsored his bombing. 'KKM stated that he had never met Osama bin Laden, had not heard him speak, and that he did not know what Osama bin Laden looked like,' the agents who debriefed him wrote.

As the United States prepares now to unleash war against Al Qaeda, its greatest challenge may be to find the front lines. In little more than a decade, Mr. bin Laden has created a sprawling, global network of men like Mr. Mohamed, terrorists-in-waiting whose skills and determination are often more finely honed than their loyalties to Al Qaeda or any of the groups to which it is allied.

The picture emerging from government documents, court transcripts and interviews is of an underground army so scattered and self-sustaining that even the elimination of Mr. bin Laden and his closest deputies might not eradicate the threat they have created. 'Bin Laden is the leader of a movement that doesn't necessarily need a leader to function and be effective,' said Juliette N. Kayyem, a terrorism expert at the Harvard University Kennedy School of Government and a former member of the National Commission on Terrorism. 'This is such a diffuse structure that it can survive without him.'

Like the suspected hijackers who attacked New York and the Pentagon on September 11, the militants of Al Qaeda's infantry may remain invisible for months or even years. They may slip quietly back into their homelands to await orders, or infiltrate into European cities or American suburbs as 'sleepers' before being mobilized to wage what they see as jihad, or holy war.

Even before the Sept. 11 attacks, Mr. bin Laden's soldiers had sometimes confounded investigators' efforts to fit them into a coherent profile. They may be middle-aged veterans of the Afghan war or younger men outraged by the spread of Western culture. They may be well-educated or barely literate, from prosperous families or poor villages. Some may have sworn an oath directly to Mr. bin Laden; others, like Mr. Mohamed, may recognize only a loose allegiance to Al Qaeda, Arabic for 'the Base.'

The government's understanding of the decentralized nature of Al Qaeda dates at least to 1996, when Jamal Ahmed al-Fadl, a former aide to Mr. bin Laden, began secretly to cooperate with the United States. Mr. Fadl was among the first to join Mr. bin Laden in 1989, the year the Soviet Union withdrew its troops from Afghanistan after a devastating 10-year war.

'Be ready for another step, because in Afghanistan, everything is over,' Mr. bin Laden exhorted his followers then, according to Mr. Fadl's testimony in the New York trial of the 1998 embassy bombers. Over the succeeding years, Mr. bin Laden redrew the map of infidels to include Israel, the United States and its sometime Arab allies, Egypt and Saudi Arabia.

According to Mr. Fadl's testimony, Al Qaeda sent trainers to Somalia and Chechnya, where Muslim forces confronted American and Russian troops respectively. It emerged after the 1998 bombing of the American Embassy in Nairobi that Al Qaeda operatives had scouted out that target years earlier on orders from their leader.

By the time of Mr. Fadl's defection, the terrorist conspiracy had taken on something resembling a corporate structure. Beneath the 'emir,' as he says Mr. bin Laden was called, sat a council of about a dozen advisers called the shura. The council, based in Afghanistan, included such bin Laden confederates as Muhammad Atef, an Egyptian who served as military commander, and Ayman al-Zawahiri, a surgeon who leads Egyptian Islamic Jihad, a terrorist group held responsible for the 1981 assassination of President Anwar el-Sadat of Egypt.

The council, in turn, oversees committees responsible for crucial areas: military operations, religious affairs, finances, and the production of false travel and identity documents.

In his testimony, Mr. Fadl suggested that Al Qaeda had taken great advantage of the protection of the Taliban in Afghanistan to build up a steady supply of arms and camps to train recruits from around the world. Just how many soldiers have graduated from Mr. bin Laden's camps is a matter of conjecture, with estimates in the thousands. But both American intelligence officials and Mr. bin Laden's own operatives have indicated that little more than a decade after its founding, Al Qaeda now can draw on a wide and diverse network of trained operatives.

Mohammed Saddiq Odeh, who was convicted this summer of helping plan the bombing of the United States Embassy in Nairobi, is a case in point. Born in Saudi Arabia to Palestinian parents who now live in Jordan, Mr. Odeh went to study architecture and engineering in the Philippines in 1986, where he fell in with Islamic radicals who were proselytising for the struggle of Afghan Muslims, the mujahedeen, against the occupying Soviet Army.

With \$1,000 that his father had given him to complete his studies, Mr. Odeh flew instead to Afghanistan in 1990 to join the fight. Although the Soviets had just withdrawn, Mr. Odeh found that Al Qaeda was eagerly seeking recruits for a new jihad against the West.

'It did not matter what nationality you were,' Mr. Odeh later told the F.B.I., according to a summary of his statement after his arrest in the embassy bombing case. The F.B.I. statement adds, 'Odeh was not interested in joining any Palestinian groups, because its members took orders from a chain of command and would often do things that were not Islamically correct if ordered to do so.'

After basic military training, Mr. Odeh went on to specialize in explosives. He worked as a military instructor and a medic before deciding to swear a formal oath, or 'bayat,' to Mr. bin Laden. But even then, he was left mostly to his own devices for the next five years, moving between Kenya and Somalia, training Muslim fighters and finally settling in a small village in Kenya, where he married and had a son. Eventually, Mr. Odeh joined the cell that was later activated for the embassy bombing in Nairobi.

Mr. Odeh's concern for religious purity was not necessarily the defining characteristic of Al Qaeda's recruits. Ahmed Ressaym, an Algerian drifter, joined up after spending years as a common thief.

Mr. Ressaym began cooperating with the United States government after he was convicted last April in a plot to blow up Los Angeles International Airport during millennium celebrations. He had worked in Algeria in a coffee shop owned by his father. He sneaked into Corsica in 1992, and worked picking oranges and grapes. Then, with a phony French passport, he moved to Canada in 1994, he said, 'to improve my life.'

For the next four years, according to his testimony at the Manhattan trial of a co-defendant this year, Mr. Ressaym supported himself on welfare checks and by stealing suitcases from tourists in Montreal hotels - selling the passports on the black market and helping himself to the traveller's checks and credit cards. After hearing stories about Afghanistan from friends, Mr. Ressaym decided in 1998 to go there himself. His goal, he said, was to join a 'jihad in Algeria.'

He spent nearly six months training in an Afghan camp with Muslims of every stripe - Jordanians, Yemenis, Saudis, Swedes, Germans, French, Turks and Chechens. He was then placed with five other Algerians in a cell led by a contact who kept in touch with Al Qaeda operatives in Europe. 'We were all to meet in Canada,' Mr. Ressaym testified, 'and we were all to carry out operations of bank robberies and then get the money to carry out an operation in America.' Mr. Ressaym said he ultimately chose the Los Angeles airport because he had flown through it and knew his way around it a bit.

Long before American investigators began to link Al Qaeda to suspected Sept. 11 hijackers like Mohamed Atta, the son of a Cairo lawyer who was sent to study in Germany, the group had also drawn children of privilege. One such recruit was Mohamed Rashed Daoud al-'Owhali, the son of a wealthy and prominent Saudi family, not unlike Mr. bin Laden. Mr. 'Owhali was born in England while his father was studying there and began devouring stories about Islamic martyrs while still in his early teens, he told the F.B.I. After two years in a religious university in Riyadh, he, too, went to Afghanistan.

At the end of his initial training, he was granted an audience with Mr. bin Laden, who advised him to get more. He then attended a 'jihad war camp,' he said, where he learned about security, intelligence, kidnapping and the hijacking of buses and planes.

Again he met with Mr. bin Laden, and again he was told to wait his turn. 'Take your time,' he quoted Mr. bin Laden as saying. 'Your mission will come in time.' Finally, Mr. 'Owhali was assigned to help in the 1998 bombing of the embassy in Nairobi.

Mr. Odeh, the Jordanian who helped prepare that attack, distinguished for the F.B.I. between two types of Al Qaeda operatives. A more sophisticated group takes care of the planning - gathering intelligence, picking targets, doing surveillance and making bombs. Those who actually carry out the attack, he suggested, are more expendable.

'These people are good Muslims, but they are not experts in anything that would have a long-term benefit to the rest of the group,' he said. Khalfan Mohamed appeared to be one of the throwaways. After helping to bomb the American Embassy in his native Tanzania, he ended up in Cape Town, South Africa, working at a fast-food joint called Burger World. Yet if Mr. Mohamed's development as an operative of Al Qaeda was limited, there was also a powerful simplicity to his ideas.

'KKM stated that his views about America began when he went to training in Afghanistan,' the F.B.I. agent who debriefed him wrote. 'KKM stated that America is a superpower with the ability to change the world. KKM stated that only bombings will make America listen to them.'

## Islamic Emirate Of Afghanistan

### *National Name:*

Dowlat-e Eslami-ye Afghanistan

### *President:*

Hamid Karzai (2002)

### *Area:*

250,000 sq mi (647,500 sq km)

### *Population (2003 est.):*

28,717,213 (growth rate: 2.4%); birth rate: 40.6/1000; infant mortality rate: 142.5/1000; density per sq mi: 115

### *Capital (2000 est.):*

Kabul, 2,450,000

### *Largest Cities (2000 est.):*

Mazar-i-Sharif, 2,500,000; Kandahar, 225,500; Herat, 177,300

### *Monetary Unit:*

Afghani

### *Languages:*

Pushtu, Dari Persian, other Turkic and minor languages

### *Ethnicity Or Race:*

Pashtun 38%, Tajik 25%, Uzbek 6%, Hazara 19%, minor ethnic groups (Chahar Aimaks, Turkmen, Baloch, and others)

### *Religion:*

Islam (Sunni 84%, Shi'ite 15%, other 1%)

### *Literacy Rate:*

29% (1990)

### *Economic Summary:*

GDP/PPP (2000 est.): \$21 billion; per capita \$800.

### *Real Growth Rate:*

n.a. Inflation: n.a. Unemployment: n.a. Arable land: 12%. Agriculture: wheat, fruits, nuts, wool, mutton, sheepskin, and lambskin. Labor force (2000 est): 10 million; agriculture 80%, industry 10%, services 10% (1990 est.). Natural resources: natural gas, petroleum, coal,

copper, chromite, talc, barites, sulfur, lead, zinc, iron ore, salt, precious and semi-precious stones. Industries: small-scale production of textiles, soap, furniture, shoes, fertilizer, and cement; hand-woven carpets; natural gas, coal, copper. Exports: \$1.2 billion (2001 est.): opium, fruits and nuts, hand-woven carpets, wool, cotton, hides and pelts, precious and semi-precious gems. Imports: \$1.3 billion (2001 est.): capital goods, food and petroleum products; most consumer goods.

*Major Trading Partners:*

Pakistan, India, Belgium, Germany, Russia, UAE, Japan, Kenya, South Korea, Turkmenistan (1999). Communications: Telephones: main lines in use: 29,000 (1998); mobile cellular: n.a. Radio broadcast stations: AM 7 (6 are inactive; the active station is in Kabul), FM 1, shortwave 1 (broadcasts in Pushtu, Dari, Urdu, and English) (1999). Radios: 167,000 (1999).

*Television Broadcast Stations:*

At least 10 (one government run central television station in Kabul and regional stations in nine of the 30 provinces; the regional stations operate on a reduced schedule; also, in 1997, there was a station in Mazar-e Sharif reaching four northern Afghanistan provinces) (1998). Televisions: 100,000 (1999). Internet Service Providers (ISPs): 1 (2000).

*Internet Users:* n.a.

Transportation: Railways: total: 24.6 km. Highways: total: 21,000 km; paved: 2,793 km; unpaved: 18,207 km (1998 est.). Waterways: 1,200 km; chiefly Amu Darya, which handles vessels up to about 500 DWT.

*Ports And Harbors:*

Kheyraabad, Shir Khan. Airports: 46 (2001 est.).

*International Disputes:*

Close ties with Pashtuns in Pakistan make long border difficult to control.

## **Geography**

Afghanistan, approximately the size of Texas, is bordered on the north by Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, and Tajikistan, on the extreme northeast by China, on the east and south by Pakistan, and by Iran on the west. The country is split east to west by the Hindu Kush mountain range, rising in the east to heights of 24,000 ft (7,315 m). With the exception of the southwest, most of the country is covered by high snow-capped mountains and is traversed by deep valleys.

## **Government**

In June 2002 a multiparty republic replaced an interim government that had been established in Dec. 2001, following the fall of the Islamic Taliban government.

## History

Darius I and Alexander the Great were the first to use Afghanistan as the gateway to India. Islamic conquerors arrived in the 7th century, and Genghis Khan and Tamerlane followed in the 13th and 14th centuries. In the 19th century, Afghanistan became a battleground in the rivalry between imperial Britain and czarist Russia for control of Central Asia. Three Anglo-Afghan wars (1839 - 42, 1878 - 80, and 1919) ended inconclusively.

In 1893 Britain established an unofficial border, the Durand Line, separating Afghanistan from British India, and London granted full independence in 1919. Emir Amanullah founded an Afghan monarchy in 1926. During the cold war, King Mohammed Zahir Shah developed close ties with the Soviet Union, accepting extensive economic assistance from Moscow. He was overthrown in 1973 by his cousin Mohammed Daoud, who was himself ousted in a 1978 coup by Noor Taraki. Taraki and his successor, Babrak Karmal, attempted to create a Marxist state. However, the new leadership was criticized by armed insurgents who bitterly opposed communism and hoped to create an Islamic state in Afghanistan. Fearing his government was on the verge of collapse, Karmal called for Soviet troops. Moscow responded with a full-scale invasion of the country in Dec. 1979.

The Soviets were met with fierce resistance from groups already energized by opposition to the Karmal government. The guerrilla forces, calling themselves mujahideen, pledged a jihad, or holy war, to expel the invaders. Initially armed with outdated weapons, the mujahideen became a focus of U.S. cold war strategy against the Soviet Union, and with Pakistan's help, Washington began funneling sophisticated arms to the resistance. Moscow's troops were soon bogged down in a no-win conflict with determined Afghan fighters. In April 1988 the USSR, U.S., Afghanistan, and Pakistan signed accords calling for an end to outside aid to the warring factions. In return, a Soviet withdrawal took place in Feb. 1989, but the pro-Soviet government of President Najibullah was left in the capital, Kabul.

By mid-April 1992 Najibullah was ousted as Islamic rebels advanced on the capital. Almost immediately, the various rebel groups began fighting one another for control. Amid the chaos of competing factions, a group calling itself the Taliban - consisting of Islamic students - seized control of Kabul in Sept. 1996. It imposed harsh fundamentalist laws, including stoning for adultery and severing hands for theft. Women were prohibited from work and school, and they were required to cover themselves from head to foot in public. By fall 1998 the Taliban controlled about 90% of the country and, with its scorched-earth tactics and human rights abuses, had turned itself into an international pariah. Only three countries, Pakistan, Saudi Arabia, and the UAE, recognized the Taliban as Afghanistan's legitimate government.

On August 20, 1998, U.S. cruise missiles struck a terrorist training complex in Afghanistan believed to have been financed by Osama Bin Laden, a wealthy Islamic radical sheltered by the Taliban. The U.S. asked for the deportation of bin Laden,

whom they believed was involved in the bombing of the U.S. embassies in Kenya and Tanzania on Aug. 7, 1998. The United Nations Security Council passed resolutions in 1999 and 2000 demanding that the Taliban cease their support for terrorism and hand over bin Laden for trial.

In September 2001, legendary guerrilla leader Ahmed Shah Masoud was killed by suicide bombers, a seeming death knell for the anti-Taliban forces, a loosely connected group referred to as the Northern Alliance. Days later, terrorists attacked New York's World Trade Centre Towers and the Pentagon, and bin Laden emerged as the primary suspect in the tragedy.

On October 7, after the Taliban repeatedly and defiantly refused to turn over bin Laden, the U.S. and its allies began daily air strikes against Afghan military installations and terrorist training camps. Five weeks later, with the help of U.S. air support, the Northern Alliance managed with breathtaking speed to take the key cities of Mazar-i-Sharif and Kabul, the capital. On Dec. 7, the Taliban regime collapsed entirely when its troops fled their last stronghold, Kandahar. However, al-Qaeda members and other mujahideen from various parts of the Islamic world who had earlier fought alongside the Taliban persisted in pockets of fierce resistance, forcing U.S. and allied troops to maintain a presence in Afghanistan. Taliban leader, Mullah Muhammad Omar, remained at large. In the meantime, Osama bin Laden was believed to be hiding somewhere in a cave complex in the mountains of Tora Bora.

The U.S. and the international community have vowed to assist Afghanistan in forming a stable government and have pledged \$25 billion for reconstruction. But intricate political, ideological, and ethnic differences, deepened by decades of war, complicated the formation of a broad-based representative government. In Dec. 2001, Hamid Karzai, a Pashtun (the dominant ethnic group in the country), and the leader of the powerful 500,000-strong Populzai clan, was named head of Afghanistan's interim government. In June 2002, 1,500 delegates gathered for a loya jirga, or grand council, and formally elected Karzai president. His term expires in 2004, when general elections will be held. Karzai, a popular figure in the West, has not yet solidified power within the country, as warlords maintain tight regional control. Haji Abdul Qadir, one of Karzai's newly appointed vice presidents, was gunned down in Kabul in July, and an assassination attempt on Karzai himself was narrowly averted in Sept.

The U.S. and its Afghan allies continued the assault through the summer of 2002 on the remaining positions held by al-Qaeda fighters. Some of the war's heaviest fighting occurred in March's Operation Anaconda, a ground offensive in Paktia Province intended to root out remaining soldiers. The U.S. war strategy met stinging criticism in Afghanistan when the number of civilian casualties hovered near 400 by mid-July. In one particularly bloody assault, more than 50 members of a wedding party were killed after an Air Force fighter jet dropped a 2,000-pound bomb in Oruzgan Province.



## **Terrorism - Europe - Chronological Order**

**UNITED KINGDOM:** Amid concern about possible al-Qaeda attacks on the British capital, the army has been assigned to increase security in London. About 450 troops have joined 1,000 extra police officers in patrolling Heathrow Airport as part of a tightening of security at several sites across the capital. The precautionary measure has reportedly been sparked by concern the Muslim religious festival of Eid - which runs from Wednesday to Saturday - may be used as an excuse to mount terror attacks.

A Scotland Yard spokesman said the heightened security at one of the world's busiest airports was related to action being taken in other countries. Troops will be guarding the airport perimeters, manning checkpoints and providing security in armoured vehicles within Heathrow. They are also reported to be patrolling the highway that leads into the airport. Troops from the First Battalion Grenadier Guards and the Household Cavalry Regiment began to take up their position at the airport at 06:00GMT. A British Ministry of Defence spokesman said the soldiers would be on guard for as long as the police needed their support.

### **Official Denies That Arrests Involve Chemical Attack**

**LONDON, ENGLAND:** According to the Associated Press, UK Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott has denied a London Times report on Sunday that three men arrested on terrorism charges were planning a poison gas attack on the London Underground. 'In this case it does not appear there is any evidence whatsoever there was going to be a gas attack or use of bombs regarding the three people who have been arrested.' According to the BBC, Prescott also played down the significance of the arrests, saying they had 'excited the press,' something that British authorities apparently didn't want to do.

### **Subway Chemical Plot Revealed; Three In Custody**

**LONDON, ENGLAND (Emergencynet News)** - According to a news report from British SkyNews, three men have been arrested on charges of participating in an alleged plot to release poison gas on the London Underground subway network. The men are described as 'North African Muslims' and are said to belong to a group that has been linked to al-Qaeda. The alleged plot was foiled after the group was infiltrated by MI5 agents in long standing operation. The suspects were reportedly charged with violation of Section 57 of the Counter-Terrorism Act 2000. Few other official details are being provided at the time of this report, and no one at Scotland Yard was made available for comment. SkyNews said that the men are scheduled to appear in court for the charges on Monday.

### **Paris Newspaper Says Terror Alert Issued In Europe**

**FRANCE:** The French newspaper Le Journal du Dimanche reported on Sunday that Osama bin Laden's al-Qaeda terrorist network is preparing to kidnap hundreds of people throughout Europe over the next few days. The Paris-based newspaper said

the objective of the operation would be to acquire a number of European hostages and then trade them for Islamic terrorists currently being held in custody in various European prisons. Citing Germany's Frankfurter Allgemeine Zeitung newspaper and French intelligence sources in its report, the French newspaper said about 30 members of al-Qaeda from Iraq, Iran, Yemen and Sudan are preparing to strike targets in France, Great Britain and Germany and take a large number of hostages in each country.

The plan, according to the newspaper, is to kidnap about 300 to 400 people in each country by taking control of people in places such as movie theaters, churches, or even by hijacking cruise ships sailing in the Mediterranean. The report said the terrorists are prepared to kill themselves along with their hostages. The paper added that the intelligence was acquired by BKA, the German intelligence agency, in Pakistan and was immediately shared with other European agencies. Germany has dismantled at least three terrorist cells operating on its territory since 9/11, including one believed to be connected to the World Trade Center and Pentagon attacks...

ENGLAND/UK: New Scotland Yards says that they believe that the 'Real IRA' is believed to be plotting a new terrorist bombing campaign over Easter using booby-trapped devices hidden in what appear to be familiar objects. David Veness, Scotland Yard Assistant Commissioner, who is head of Specialist Operations, fears that the terrorists will plant explosives inside items such as traffic cones to trap police, security staff and members of the public in their attacks.

On a related note, Comm. Veness was also reportedly very concerned about security lapses at Heathrow airport. After two high-profile robberies in supposedly secure areas, he said he had 'grave concerns' over the state of security affairs at Heathrow. Source: Times of London

ITALY: In what Prime Minister Silvio Berlusconi denounced as a terrorist attack, a senior advisor to Italy's right-wing government who was linked to controversial labour reform plans has been assassinated. Marco Biagi, a 51-year-old economist and law professor, was shot twice in the neck out-side his home in central Bologna as he returned home by bicycle Tuesday evening. Police said no one had claimed responsibility for the killing.

But there have been reports that a five-point star, the symbol of the ultra-left Red Brigades terrorist group, carved on the door of Biagi's house after the departure of security forces. They said it was impossible to say if the symbol had been put there recently. Biagi's death bears similarities to the 1999 killing of an aide to Italy's labour minister at the time, Antonio Bassolino, which was claimed by the successors to the Red Brigades. The Red Brigades terrorist group was involved in bombings and murders in Italy in the 1970s to mid-1980s, with their most high-profile action being the kidnapping and later killing of the leader of the Christian Democrats, Aldo Moro, in 1978.

**BOSNIA:** Police raided the offices and homes of employees of the Islamic charity identified by authorities as the 'Benevolentia International Foundation' in Sarajevo and in the central Bosnian town of Zenica on Tuesday, seizing documents belonging to the group and interrogating staff members. The efforts were meant to shut down terrorist activities. According to a police statement, the U.S. government had earlier blocked the assets of Benevolentia's offices in Newark, New Jersey; Palos Hills, Illinois; and Bosnia. Officials said last week that funds were missing from Benevolentia and two other Islamic aid organizations. Bosnian officials promised the U.S. government last week that it would crack down on the groups. In Tuesday's United Nations-monitored operation, police carried out simultaneous raids in the offices and in six private homes.

### **German Magazine Says CIA Has Warned Germany And U.K. Of Bomb Attacks**

**GERMANY:** Germany's Focus magazine reported on Saturday that the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency has warned Germany and Britain about possible bomb attacks by members of Osama bin Laden's al-Qaeda terror network. Citing a memo disseminated on 8 March by Germany's BKA federal police authority, the magazine said the CIA information was based on surveillance of two suspected al-Qaeda members in Pakistan. The two were quoted by the CIA as saying there would soon be 'good news' about bomb explosions in Germany and Britain. According to the report, due to be published in Focus magazine's Monday edition, the BKA classified the CIA alert as 'vague' because it did not mention any time, target or method. But the BKA said the fact there could still be al-Qaeda 'sleepers' in Germany meant security services should assume there was 'an unchanged high risk situation in Germany.'

### **Suspicious Packages Received by British Leaders**

**LONDON, England (EmergencyNet News)** - According to preliminary reports coming from the U.K., packages containing a 'caustic substance' have been received at a number of government offices. Instructions included within the packages claim they contain a complimentary sample of 'eucalyptus oil,' but chemical analysis of the material has revealed that they actually contained 'sodium hydroxide,' which could cause serious injury if it comes in contact with the skin or respiratory system.

Police sources said that at least fourteen (14) of these packages had been sent, including one addressed to #10 Downing Street, the address of British Prime Minister Tony Blair. Mr. Blair is in no danger as he is presently in Australia, where he is attending a meeting. A telephone warning concerning the packages was reportedly received from a group identifying itself as the 'Scottish National Liberation Army (SNLA).' Police asked that anyone who receives a suspicious package similar to the one pictured above should immediately call 999, the British equivalent of 911 emergency number in the USA. British police and intelligence sources said that an intensive inquiry is underway into the entire matter...

## **Italians Arrest Four Suspicious Moroccans; Possible Plot On U.S. Embassy?**

ITALY: Police said on Wednesday they arrested four Moroccans in possession of large quantities of cyanide-based compound and maps of Rome highlighting the location of the U.S. embassy. Investigators believe the men, arrested early Tuesday, were plotting an attack on the embassy or on Rome's water supply. The four Moroccans arrested Tuesday had been followed by police for days and their detention was related to the arrest of three more Moroccans last week. Around ten pounds of cyanide and maps pinpointing the embassy and other locations were found on those arrested. The U.S. embassy, prominently located on Rome's famed Via Veneto, has been targeted for attack on several occasions in recent months. Even before the 9/11 attacks on U.S. cities, the embassy was forced to shut for three days after an intelligence warning of a possible bombing. Following the attacks on the Pentagon and World Trade Center, the U.S. State Department warned again that American symbols in Italy could be targets of attacks.

## **US Officials Believe Al-Qaeda Could Still Strike**

WASHINGTON: A US Defense official said that al-Qaeda terrorists are still capable of carrying out attacks on a global scale but Osama bin Laden's control over the network has been severely disrupted with the loss of Afghanistan. According to the British-based Financial Times newspaper, Western intelligence officials also warned the terrorist network was far from destroyed and is preparing a new phase of activity.

An unnamed Pentagon official said that al-Qaeda leaders are struggling to get out of Afghanistan and move their operations to a safe place, but so far have been unable to find another country willing to support them. The official said of al-Qaeda: 'It's lost its centre of gravity. The loss of Afghanistan cannot be underestimated. It was the one state sponsor they had. Bin Laden himself, obviously, his organization and his key lieutenants being on the run, moving, not having a safe haven clearly cannot operate the way they did before. They basically cannot control the organization the way they did before.'

The official said intelligence on bin Laden's whereabouts was 'all over the map,' but he said al-Qaeda leaders were still in the process of trying to get out of Afghanistan to a safe place. Reiterating charges made recently by US Defense Secretary Donald Rumsfeld, the official said some al-Qaeda members have made their way into Iran with the help of the government.

TURKEY: Police in Ankara said three al-Qaeda suspects that have been arrested are believed to have been en route to Israel to carry out a suicide bomb attack. The suspects were reportedly heading to Istanbul, before travelling to an Israeli city to carry out their mission. They had been trained by, and had fought for, the Taliban in Afghanistan. The three men were detained several days ago in the eastern city of Van. Police say they had entered the country illegally from Iran.

Two of the men are said to be Palestinians, and the third a Jordanian. Police identified them as Firaz Suleiman, Ahmed Mahmoud and Mustafa Hassan. It is the first time since the 9/11 attacks that al-Qaeda suspects have been held in Turkey. A police spokesman told a news conference in Ankara that the suspects were arrested after their car failed to stop at a checkpoint. He said they were members of a group, Beyyiat al-Imam, which was linked to al-Qaeda.

### **Major Raids Carried Out On Militants In U.K.**

UNITED KINGDOM: The British newspaper, The Times, was reporting on Friday that two Algerian asylum seekers living in Leicester were charged with plotting terrorist attacks in Europe on Thursday as police launched their biggest drive against al-Qaeda suspects in Britain. Armed police sealed off Leicester Magistrates' Court as 37-year-old Baghdad Meziane was charged with being a leader of operations for the evil Osama bin Laden's terrorist network. Brahim Benmerzouga, 30, was accused of helping to finance operations and owning equipment that could have been used in bomb attacks. A five-month Europe-wide investigation identified Leicester as a centre since 1998 for bin Laden's plan to bomb the US Embassy in Paris and targets in other European cities. Both these men had been held by British immigration officials since they were arrested at their homes in Leicester just days after the 9/11 suicide hijackings.

### **Threat Issued By Fanatical British Islamist**

UNITED KINGDOM: The 22-year-old leader of the Pakistan wing of the British-based Al-Muhajiroun, a militant Islamic group, who claims to have sent 200 volunteers to Afghanistan to aid the Taliban said Monday on BBC radio that they may return to Britain to launch terrorist attacks against government and military targets. The radical leader, identified as Hassan Butt, said some of the Britons he recruited to fight with Afghanistan's ousted Taliban government were killed by U.S.-led forces. Those who survived could now launch a 'new phase' of terrorism in their British homeland. Butt said: 'If they do return, I do believe they will take military action within Britain.' He said their targets would be 'British military and government institutes, as well as British military and government individuals.'

The British government responded to Butt's claim by saying that it would prosecute anyone caught engaging in acts of terrorism or supporting terrorist groups. The British Home Office statement said: 'We are monitoring a number of individuals and their organizations.' Ghayasauddin Siddiqui, leader of the Muslim Parliament of Great Britain, an unofficial assembly of Muslim organizations and civic groups in Britain, called Butt's statement 'a very worrying and frightening point of view. These young men have been ... misguided by people of little understanding. He bluntly added that the radicals 'are using Islam as a cover for their evil designs' and hoped they 'will realize their mistakes ... and reorder their priorities.'

Butt, on Monday, gave security forces another reason to be questioned, he said

he secretly returned to Britain for three weeks after the 9/11 terrorist attacks on the United States, undetected by security forces. Butt said: 'The mere fact that the British government had no idea I was here shows the incompetence and shows the vulnerability that Britain has when it comes to dealing with the mujahedin and the Muslims.' Late on Monday, Scotland Yard began investigating whether a prosecution can be launched against Butt. A Metropolitan Police spokesman said: 'The Met is working closely with the Crown Prosecution Service to examine comments made on the radio today, to establish if any offenses have been committed.'

### **British Search Ship For Bin Laden-Related Paraphernalia Terror Group Reference: Al-Qaeda**

UNITED KINGDOM: Security authorities said Britain's Royal Navy and Anti-Terrorist Branch officers boarded an Indian-flagged cargo ship on Friday said to be carrying a cargo of sugar from Djibouti in East Africa and the Indian Ocean island of Mauritius. The ship, said to have started its voyage from Mauritius, was believed to have posed a major threat to Britain's national security. Authorities officially declined to elaborate.

Officers from the British Navy, Scotland Yard's Anti-Terrorist Branch and Customs and Excise boarded the 500-foot ship off the Sussex coast in the English Channel at about 08:00BST. British newspapers reported that elite Special Boat Service commandos were involved in the interception. Spokesmen for the services and agencies involved offered no immediate explanation of what prompted the joint operation, but the action followed the arrests in Somalia, Djibouti's neighbor, of several people suspected of links with Osama bin Laden's al-Qaeda terrorist network.

The Metropolitan Police's Anti-Terrorist Branch - the bomb squad - in a joint security operation with the Royal Navy and Customs, said it was acting on 'a credible tip-off' that terrorist material was on board. An initial search of the vessel uncovered nothing and it has now been taken to Sandown Bay off the Isle of Wight - where very few people live - for a second search which could last several days. Scotland Yard said it was unsure how long the ship was going to remain off the Isle but it would be moved to an unspecified location once the search was complete. Police said the probe was a 'major security operation' and security sources said they were acting on intelligence that the vessel was carrying 'terrorist material.'

Some reports said the police were looking for 'terrorist paraphernalia which was bin Laden-related' but they would not be more specific and stressed there was no intelligence to suggest anthrax was involved. The ship, MV Nisha, which is owned by the Bombay-based Great Eastern Shipping Company, was heading for a sugar refinery in east London. The ship was boarded by the Royal Navy and Anti-Terrorist Branch officers at about 08:00GMT. The ship was due to arrive in England at 04:00GMT on Saturday.

The British Ministry of Defense said the frigate HMS Sutherland was involved in the operation. Four rigid-inflatable boats, filled with security personnel, were used

to board the merchant vessel. Reports out of the United Kingdom say defence experts are warning that al-Qaeda could be planning a 'Christmas spectacular' to hit back at the West. Former British army officer and security expert Mike Yardley said the holiday period would be prime time for terrorists to strike. Yardley said: 'After being seen to come off badly in Afghanistan the network's chiefs will be keen to prove its potency abroad. Defences are liable to be down over the Christmas holiday, making it an ideal choice for terrorists.'

According to Yardley, any attack may include 'exotic' weapons, including the so called dirty bomb, which uses conventional means to spread large doses of radiation. He said Britain would be a likely target because of its support in the war against the Taliban. Andrew Linington, of the National Union of Marine Aviation and Shipping Transport Officers, warned that it was 'frighteningly easy' for ships to be used to transport terrorist material. He said that intelligence services of several countries were monitoring at least 20 suspect vessels at the time of this report.

The British Mirror newspaper speculated that Islamic extremists were planning a suicide attack on a high profile target such as the houses of parliament using 20 tons of explosives loaded at Djibouti, where the ship had stopped off. The Independent newspaper said police might have stopped the wrong ship, leading to the possibility that another vessel containing bomb-making equipment, arms, or other material may still at sea...and maybe heading for Britain. The paper added that the operation was ordered after information supplied by a foreign intelligence agency (Probably of U.S. origin). Police refused to say why the boat had aroused suspicion. British Prime Minister Tony Blair said he could not comment on the potential nature of this or other threats.

The British Guardian newspaper said a 20-page British government document referred to intelligence warnings of possible nuclear, biological or chemical attacks. It also warned: 'Whether he is killed or not, bin Laden's allies need urgently to re-establish their capability and intent in order to make up the ground they have lost since September 11: they will seek to do this through terrorist attacks...'

### **Germany Warned Of Possible Terrorist Attack**

A spokesperson said on Saturday that German authorities have been warned by a foreign intelligence agency about a possible terrorist attack. A magazine report said a terror cell could have been planning an attack as early as this weekend. According to the news weekly Focus, the warning came from authorities in the United States and said a three-person terrorist cell may be planning to launch an attack in the coming months. The report said an attack might be timed to coincide with the end of Islamic holy month of Ramadan this weekend and target public transport.

Newspaper Says Terror Plot On Britain Uncovered The British newspaper The Observer reported on Saturday that a plot for a bomb attack on the City of London was discovered at a terrorist base in Afghanistan. The intelligence found reportedly revealed a sophisticated al-Qaeda training program to spread its terror

campaign to Britain. The plan is contained in a notebook written in clear English discovered at an al-Qaeda camp in the former Taliban stronghold of Kandahar.

What is said to be concerning British police and intelligence services is that there is no indication whether the terrorist who drew up the plan stayed to fight and die with bin Laden's group, or whether he had already left on his mission to Britain before the suicide hijackings of 11 September. In step-by-step instructions the notebook describes how to construct a huge remote-controlled van bomb - similar to those used by al-Qaeda operatives against the US embassies in Kenya and Tanzania in 1998. A scribbled note on top of one page suggests the intended target was Moorgate in the centre of London's financial district. The notebook was said to be the first hard evidence that London was also a possible intended target. It also appears to confirm the fears of intelligence services and the Metropolitan Police that an al-Qaeda sleeper cell may already be in Britain preparing an attack....possibly during the holiday season.

### **ETA Plan To Blow Up Picasso Tower?**

SPAIN: Authorities said the Basque separatist group, ETA, was planning to blow up the tallest building in the Spanish capital, Madrid, two years ago. Spain's police chief, Juan Cotino, said the plot was confirmed during questioning of two ETA members, arrested in connection with a car-bomb explosion earlier this week. They told police that ETA planned to attack the Picasso Tower, where around 5,000 people work.

The attack was planned for December 1999 to mark the resumption of violence by ETA after a 14-month ceasefire. That month, Spanish police intercepted two vans containing 1.7 tons of explosives. The then interior minister said that ETA was planning what he called a 'Christmas massacre' in Madrid. The glass and steel tower, more than 40 stories high, was built by the same architect who designed the World Trade Center, Minoru Yamasaki. It stands on Madrid's Paseo de La Castellana.

The Madrid newspaper *El Mundo* reported in October 1999 that Basque separatists arrested in France for stealing eight tons of dynamite were plotting to blow up a building in Madrid. The newspaper, quoting French investigators, said three members of ETA had instructions to destroy a high-profile building in Madrid in the middle of the night.

### **US Closes Sofia, Bucharest Embassies To Public**

WASHINGTON - The U.S. Embassies in Sofia, Bulgaria, and Bucharest, Romania, were closed to the public on Thursday for a security review, an unidentified State Department official is quoted as saying. The official, who asked not to be named, linked the closures to a 'worldwide caution' for Americans abroad issued by the State Department on June 22. That advisory mentioned the possibility of attacks on Americans by groups connected with Saudi-born militant Osama bin Laden, who has been charged with planning the attacks on the U.S. Embassies in Kenya and Tanzania in 1998.



State department spokesman Richard Boucher, in a press briefing yesterday, said of the closings, 'Our US embassies in Bucharest, Romania and Sofia, Bulgaria are closed to the public today in order to review their respective security postures. I am not in a position to go into detail on this. I would say that American citizens who need emergency services can phone these embassies and get through to people who can help them. Each post will look at its security posture and reopen at an appropriate time. I can't speculate at this moment on when that might be.'

When asked specifically about the June 22nd DoS statement on terrorist threats and direct links to Osama Bin Laden, Mr. Boucher said, 'I can't discuss in detail the reasons for this review of the security postures, but I would not draw that conclusion automatically...'

### **'Carlos The Jackal' Calls For World-Wide Terrorist Campaign In Support Of Palestinians**

PARIS - Illich Ramirez Sanchez, alias 'Carlos the Jackal,' has reportedly issued a call for 'protracted people's war, without boundaries' to be directed against Israel and the United States. According to press reports, Carlos wrote the letter to George Habash, the Damascus-based head of the Popular Front for the Liberation of Palestine (PFLP), following the death of Abu Ali Mustafa in Ramallah. According to the Reuters news service, Sanchez's lawyers released the letter to the media and confirmed its authenticity.

'The deceitful 'peace process' has come to a pitiful demise. People's resistance in Palestine, armed operations worldwide, are the alternative to surrender, Carlos wrote. According to European press sources, Sanchez signed the letter, 'Allahu Akhbar!' and 'Yours in Revolution.'

FLORENCE -Italian police on Tuesday defused an 'unsophisticated' explosive device near the U.S. Consulate in Florence. Consulate security guards found the device -an explosive in a plastic bag with two wires attached concealed in a shoe box -on the street and notified police. No damage was caused by the device, according to U.S. consulate official David Engel. There was no immediate claim of responsibility, although Italian news agencies said a note with 'anti-American, anti-capitalist and anti-Israeli phrases' was found near the device. They provided no further details...

### **Radical Leftist Group Claims Courthouse Bomb**

VECICE, Italy - The 'Anti-Imperialist Terrorist Cells for a Fighting Communist Party' claimed responsibility for the bombing of courthouse in central Venice on Thursday. In the statement, which was delivered by telephone to two regional Italian newspapers, the radical leftist group said that they blew up the courthouse in retribution for the death of an alleged anarchist. 'We mourn the anarchist Carlo Giuliani, executed in Genoa by assassins in the service of the national and international imperialist bourgeoisie,' a statement said. Italian police said that they have some knowl-

edge of the group and that they may have links to the old 'Brigate Rosse,' or Red Brigade. Troubling were additional threats that stated that the group would undertake additional terrorist acts. The courthouse bombing remains under investigation...

### **Man Charged As Bomb Plot Mastermind**

ENGLAND - Federal Officials have said that a London-based Algerian has been arrested and charged by U.S. authorities with being one of the masterminds of a plot by Islamic terrorists to bomb Los Angeles International Airport on the eve of the millennium. Authorities also have linked the man, Abu Doha, to an alleged conspirator in a second millennium terrorist plot to detonate bombs at several sites in Jordan often visited by American and Israeli tourists. Doha, who was already in custody in London on immigration violations, was charged in a sealed criminal complaint on 2 July with conspiring to use a weapon of mass destruction to blow up an LAX terminal just before New Year's Day 2000 as part of a jihad against the United States.

### **Germany Public Announcement**

From July 16 to July 27, the city of Bonn in western Germany will host the Sixth Conference of the Parties to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change. There will be thousands of government officials, non-governmental organization members, press representatives, and security personnel in Bonn.

It is estimated that large numbers of protesters will be present before and during the conference meeting period. As at past international meetings, it is likely that some of the demonstrators will become disorderly or violent. If this occurs, clashes could result in injuries and/or arrests. German officials are working to minimize the potential for disruption. Travellers to and through Bonn are likely to experience delays, detours, and limitations on their movement due to traffic and other restrictions. Designated roads and pedestrian thoroughfares between Bonn Friesdorf and the Bonn Rheinaue Park will be closed to the general public. During the conference period, U.S. citizens who must travel to Bonn, should exercise caution, avoid any crowds or demonstrations, and monitor the local media to be kept informed.

### **Germany Reportedly Investigating Terrorist Activity**

GERMANY: A foreign intelligence service analyst told Germany's DDP News Agency that Islamic terrorists with links to master terrorist Osama bin Laden are targeting Germany. The German Federal Intelligence Service (BND) and the Federal Office of Criminal Investigations (BKA) are said to be cooperating with the intelligence services of France and the US CIA to track bin Laden's activities. The French intelligence services have reportedly pointed out to their German counterparts that Germany has also become a 'resting/staging area' for Islamic terrorists...

*Source:*

Emergency Net News Mid-Day Intelligence Report

## **German Security Officials Reportedly Warn About Growing 'Islamic Fundamentalism'**

In an article coming from an interesting source, the Islamic Republic News Agency (IRNA) reported over the weekend that the director of the German domestic intelligence service, Verfassungsschutz, has warned in light of the latest violent escalations in the Middle East, of possible terrorist attacks by a 'bin Laden' group in west Europe. While referring to a recent police raid on several homes of suspected militants in Germany, Heinz Fromm reportedly said: 'We have evidence about plans by fundamentalist groups to strike at targets inside western Europe. The terrorists will most likely choose soft targets in Europe which unlike American installations, are not heavily guarded.' A senior German interior ministry official cautioned last week against the rise of 'Islamic fundamentalism' in Germany calling it a 'very serious danger' to the country's security.

## **'Real IRA' Finally To Be Branded 'Terrorists' By United States**

The US State Department is expected to finally announce on Wednesday that it is officially designating the Irish republican group the 'Real IRA' as a foreign terrorist organization. It will mean that the group, which has been blamed for a series of bomb attacks in Northern Ireland and mainland Britain, will have any assets it has in the United States frozen. The sanctions against the group would mean the following:

- ☒ A freeze on assets in the US.
- ☒ Real IRA members would be denied US visas.
- ☒ Ban on Americans giving the group money or support.

The Real IRA has been held responsible for some of the most high-profile terrorist attacks by an Irish organization in recent years. The group has claimed responsibility for the 1998 bombing in the town of Omagh in Northern Ireland, which killed 29 people and injured more than 200. The Real IRA has also been blamed for recent attacks on the BBC's Television Centre, London's Hammersmith Bridge and the headquarters of the British Secret Service, MI6. In its annual report on global terrorism, the US State Department has estimated that the total membership of the dissident republican group has more than doubled, to between 150 and 200 people. The State Department says the group does receive considerable support in the US.

In other news regarding Northern Ireland, British army explosives experts are checking the area around the scene of a mortar attack on Bessbrook Army base in south Armagh. There were no reports of damage or injuries following the attack. Police said a 'loud bang' was reported shortly before 2200 BST on Tuesday. Homes on two nearby streets were evacuated. An RUC spokesman said a device appeared to have been used and an investigation was being launched. One official said that it appeared that a van was left abandoned and a missile was fired from it.

## Scotland Yard Fears More Terror Attacks

Armed warnings of a bombing campaign by dissident republicans, armed police officers can now be seen on the streets of London. Anti-Terrorist Branch officers at Scotland Yard have warned of a likely escalation in the bombing campaign in the run-up to the general election, and have intelligence reports warning of heightened danger. Officers say Britain has now entered a 'period of danger.'

Assistant Metropolitan Police Commissioner David Veness said he feared there was 'worse to come' from the 'Real IRA' and other Irish dissident groups following the announcement of upcoming national elections. He warned the British public to be vigilant in the weeks leading up to 7 June. Undercover Special Branch officers and armed units are now said to be in major UK cities. Police believe an 'active service unit' of the Real IRA is operating in London and they fear it will step up its activities as 7 June gets nearer.

Although Scotland Yard will not comment on detailed security matters, it is believed that all of the main candidates in the general election will be guarded by Special Branch officers during the campaign. MI5 and the National Crime Squad will also be seeking to flush out the Real IRA unit before it can do significant damage. Earlier this week the commander of Scotland Yard's Anti-Terrorist Branch, Alan Fry, said police would put into play contingency plans to deal with the possibility of an election terror campaign.

## London Postal Depot Rocked By Explosion

One person was slightly injured when a bomb exploded at a north London postal depot on Sunday. It was the second blast at the same site in three weeks. Police blamed renegades who have split from the Irish Republican Army. The early morning blast blew out windows and charred walls at the mail sorting centre, which was empty at the time. The injured person was a passer-by who was not seriously hurt. It was the third bombing in six weeks in London. All have been blamed on breakaway members of the Irish Republican Army who oppose Northern Ireland's peace process.

The head of Scotland Yard's Anti-Terrorist Branch warned the public to be on guard for a bombing campaign in the run up to a general election. Deputy Assistant Commissioner Alan Fry said the blast happened at 01:53BST on Sunday. Fry said police had contingency plans for dealing with the 'major challenge' of a terror campaign ahead of the election, which is expected to be called within days.

A spokesman for Scotland Yard said no warning was given ahead of the latest blast and no one has claimed responsibility. In the past year, London has been hit by several terror attacks blamed on dissident Irish republican group the Real IRA. Fry said that about half a pound of explosives had been used in the latest blast. Anti-Terrorist officers have been on high alert over the bank holiday weekend as Saturday was the 20th anniversary of the death of hunger striker Bobby Sands.

## **Foreign Terror Groups To Be Banned In The UK**

The British government announced on Wednesday the names of foreign organizations it intends to ban under new anti-terrorist legislation. Among the twenty-one organizations are the Algerian groups the Armed Islamic Group (GIA), and the Salafist GSPC and the Egyptian organizations Islamic Jihad and Al-Gama'at al-Islamiya. They join such groups as the Basque separatist organization, ETA, the Kurdish PKK based in Turkey, the Tamil Tiger guerrillas in Sri Lanka and the Al-Qa'ida organization of master terrorist Osama Bin Laden. The list includes the Greek terror group, November 17.

The British parliament is being asked to approve the list, which would allow activities in Britain on behalf of the groups to be banned. The law makes it illegal to incite terrorism abroad and was introduced following complaints that several foreign groups have been using London as a base. Many of the groups on the new list have Middle Eastern links. Besides those already mentioned, the list includes the Hezbollah, the Abu Nibal Organization and Mujaheddin al-Khalq.

Under the new law, British police have powers to seize assets and arrest those who use violence or the threat of it 'for the purpose of advancing a political, religious or ideological cause.' Fund-raising or openly supporting a banned organization could lead to arrest. The British are reportedly trying to respond to governments abroad, including Saudi Arabia and the United States, where critics have complained that the U.K. is 'a haven for terror organizations.'

## **Alleged Iraqi Spies Arrested In Germany**

A German prosecutor said on Thursday that two suspected Iraqi spies were arrested in Germany this week. The two, who are strongly suspected of being Iraqi secret service agents, were arrested by federal investigators on 25 and 27 February. Investigators believe that they had been working in various German cities since the beginning of the year on behalf of an Iraqi intelligence agency.

## **Scotland Yard Anti-Terrorist Branch Continues To Probe London Blast**

Police investigating a bomb blast at a Territorial Army barracks which maimed a teenager are not ruling out the possibility that Irish dissidents planted the device. The explosion in west London on Wednesday evening left a 14-year-old boy blinded. He also lost his hand and lower arm. Officers from Scotland Yard's Anti-Terrorist Branch investigating the explosion have now established that the device -concealed in flashlight -contained high explosives. Police are advising people to be alert to suspicious objects, particularly any that look like a flashlight. 'We cannot rule out that there could be further attacks...and urge everyone to be vigilant of suspicious objects and packages,' Deputy Assistant Commissioner Alan Fry, said.

Head of the Anti-Terrorist branch, Fry said further scientific tests are now being carried out to establish the origin of the high explosive and whether it was Semtex or another military substance. Fry said no group had claimed responsibility

for the attack, but added: 'The perpetrators obviously had access to high explosives and therefore we cannot rule out that Irish dissident groups may be involved...'

ERRI counter-terrorist analysts said that devices similar to those used in the U.K. army barracks bomb have previously been reported in the United States. In at least two instances, it is believed that they were left at the scene of an emergency, in an effort to target police, fire, or EMS personnel. No suspects have been identified in the U.S. incidents.

### **Two Wounded By Letter Bombs In Northern England**

British authorities issued a general warning on mailed packages on Friday after two letter bombs went off in northern England - the third and fourth in a month. Two people were injured by the devices. Police said that people who work in farming and agriculture appear to be the targets.

A small package containing nails exploded in the face of a 58-year-old farmer on Friday morning in North Yorkshire. At about the same time in East Yorkshire, a padded letter detonated in the hands of a female employee of a real estate company. Both victims were hospitalised with facial injuries. Two similar devices were received by mail last month - a 30 December bomb that injured the 6-year-old daughter of a pest controller, and a 15 December device sent to an agricultural company.

North Yorkshire Police deputy chief constable Peter Walker said: 'It is too early to say if the incidents are definitely linked, but this is a possibility. I am extremely concerned that these devices are being sent through the post in a totally indiscriminate manner. We are asking everyone to exercise caution when dealing with their mail, especially members of the farming and agricultural communities who appear to be targets of these attacks. We are liaising with other forces including the Metropolitan police anti-terrorist branch to see if the cases are definitely linked.'

Cheshire police said after the 30 December explosion that 'animal rights protesters' have been linked with previous bombing attempts, but they expressed confusion over the targeting of a pest control business. The real estate agency targeted Friday has dealings with livestock auctions. Meanwhile in Kent, 46 dogs were stolen by the Animal Liberation Front from a Beagle kennel near Wye College, in the early hours of Friday. The group claimed responsibility for the theft in an e-mail to a local radio station in which activist James George claimed the dogs had been kept in inhumane conditions.

### **Four Alleged Terrorism Suspects Arrested**

Prosecutors said on Thursday that authorities have arrested four suspected terrorists with ties to Osama Bin Laden and seized weapons and explosives during a search of two Frankfurt apartments. The four were arrested Tuesday on charges of belonging to a criminal organization, arms and explosives violations and falsifying documents.

During a subsequent search of two apartments on Wednesday, authorities

seized 44 pounds of a chemical prosecutors said can be used to manufacture explosives, as well as homemade detonators, a hand grenade, sub-machine guns, dismantled rifles, revolvers and ammunition. All four suspects were living under assumed names, and prosecutors said their true identities were not yet known. Their documents identified them as Ayoubi B. of Algeria, Hisham E. and Lamin M. of Iraq and Fouad S. of France. Prosecutors said they were part of an international network trained by bin Laden's followers in Afghanistan, and that they set up logistics in Germany to support attacks on the 'enemies of Islam.' No evidence linking them to any actual or planned attack was found.

Terrorism: Asia - Chronological Order

### **Al-Qaeda Planned Multiple Suicide Bombings For Singapore**

SINGAPORE: A confidential report obtained by the Associated Press said that al-Qaeda planned a series of suicide bombings to be carried out in the Philippines two years ago, but was forced to move the terrorist operation to Singapore because of tight security at the U.S. and Israeli embassies in Manila. A western intelligence report shared with the Philippine government detailed the plot directed by Kuwaiti-born Canadian al-Qaeda member Mohammad Mansour Jabarah. He had obtained explosives and weapons for multiple suicide attacks against the U.S. and Israeli embassies, but decided to move the operation to Singapore because the buildings housing the embassies were too far from the roadway for a suicide vehicle to access them.

In October 2001 Jabarah then chose seven alternate targets in Singapore, including the embassies belonging to the U.S., Israel, Britain and Australia. Singaporean authorities arrested thirteen members of the three al-Qaeda cells chosen to carry out the attack last year. Jabarah was later arrested in Oman, where he revealed the full extent of the operation to his interrogators. Al-Qaeda operative and Jemaah Islamiyah chief Riduan Isamuddin (a.k.a Hambali) liaised with Jabarah on numerous occasions, supplying him with the contact details of the Asian operatives recruited for the terrorist operation in Singapore. Included in his list of contacts was al-Qaeda member Faiz Bin Abu Bakar Bafana, who was detained in Singapore and Fathur Rohman al-Ghozi, an Indonesian bomb expert and Jemaah Islamiyah leader who was convicted of explosive charges in the Philippines.

According to the Associated Press report, in January 2000 when Jabarah arrived in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, for a meeting with regional terrorist leaders, al-Ghozi had already obtained 4 tons of ammonium nitrate and 300 kilograms (720 pounds) of TNT for the operation. Recently, Al-Ghozi admitted to helping plan the 19 near-simultaneous bombings in Manila during the holidays in 2000, that killed 22 people.

### **Multiple Simultaneous Explosions Reported In N. Bangladesh**

Mymensingh, Bangladesh (Emergencynet News) - At least three cinemas in this northern Bangladeshi town have been struck by explosions today. Numerous casualties are being reported as the movie were filled by people celebrating the Islamic Eid-

ul-Fitr festival at the end of Ramadan. It is being reported that at least ten people are dead and more than one hundred may have been wounded. Rescue efforts are reported to be underway at this time, and local emergency personnel say that the death and injury toll is expected to rise. According to fragmentary and early reports from the region, all of the explosions happened within minutes of each other, a little after 18:00 local time. There was no immediate claim of responsibility for the blasts, nor cause firmly established. Unconfirmed suspicions immediately fell on radical Muslim militants, who have previously attacked movie theatres, because they believe movie attendance to be a sacrilege to Islam.

*Source:*

ERRI/Emergency Net News Watchdesk

### **Designation Of A Foreign Terrorist Organization**

Secretary Colin L. Powell

Washington, DC

October 23, 2002

The United States is taking several important steps today as part of our continuing efforts to combat global terrorism. I am announcing the designation of the Jemaah Islamiya organization (JI), which was founded by Abdullah Sungkar, as a Foreign Terrorist Organization. I am also announcing the designation of JI under Executive Order 13224.

In addition to these actions, the United States will join Australia, Brunei, Burma, Cambodia, Indonesia, Japan, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, South Korea, Thailand, Timor Leste (East Timor), and other partners around the world to ask the relevant United Nations sanctions committee to include JI on its consolidated list of individuals and entities the assets of which member states are required to freeze in accordance with UN Security Council Resolutions 1267 and 1390. This joint referral to the UN sanctions committee is a powerful signal that the countries of Southeast Asia will not tolerate terrorism on their territory and that they are committed to working with the international community to put a stop to wanton acts of terror. [Click here to get the entire story from the U.S. State Department...](#)

### **US CINCPAC Wants More Resources To Fight Terror**

WASHINGTON: The commander in chief of US forces in the Pacific has asked Congress for 5,000 more counter terrorism experts while recommending that lawmakers lift restrictions on military cooperation with violence-torn Indonesia. In a sweeping overview of the security situation in the region, US CINCPAC Admiral Dennis Blair promised on Wednesday an assertive strategy to combat the terrorist threat wherever it existed. Blair told two House subcommittees, which handle Pacific,



Asian and Middle Eastern Affairs: 'We cannot provide adequate protection to our citizens and our forces while only playing defence.'

Blair pointed out that the events of 9/11 and the subsequent anti-terrorism operations around the world had created new manpower requirements. The new counter terrorism experts would participate in increased shore and harbour security patrols, operate regional command and control facilities and take part in crisis action teams. The request came as the Pentagon sent to the Philippines six more military helicopters and a team of aviation experts in a boost of the US military presence in the southern part of the country.

The admiral praised the government in Manila for its security cooperation with Washington but warned that the war against Abu Sayyaf, 'will not be won by military operations alone.' He said: 'Improvements in law enforcement, intelligence, economics, business, information, media, academia, community leadership and religion will have enduring and important roles in the battle.' Blair warned that Indonesia, beset by separatist and sectarian violence, is 'vulnerable to terrorist penetration.' He added: 'With many challenges on its plate, and diminishing resources, Indonesia's security apparatus does not have full control of its borders. Moreover, Indonesia has not aggressively investigated domestic elements that are sympathetic to the aims of al-Qaeda...'

### **China Claims Bin Laden Connections With Uighur Militants**

CHINA: Claiming publicly for the first time that the terror network led by Osama Bin Laden had supplied violent groups in the region with money, arms and leadership, China attempted again to link its fight against ethnic separatists in northwest Xinjiang province to the international war on terrorism. In a 15-page report posted on the Internet, the government blamed separatist forces in the largely Muslim region for more than 200 explosions, assassinations and other attacks over the past 11 years that have killed 162 people and injured more than 440. The report included unusually detailed accounts of attacks on local officials, police and Muslim leaders who support Beijing.

Since the 9/11 attacks on the World Trade Center and the Pentagon, the Chinese government has released an unusually large amount of information about Uighur violence, and Chinese diplomats have tried to convince foreign visitors that as many as 1,000 Chinese Muslims have trained in bin Laden's terrorist camps in Afghanistan. Some analysts argue that the government is exaggerating the threat posed by separatists in Xinjiang, which is sometimes called East Turkistan. The report said China has arrested more than 100 terrorists in Xinjiang who received training abroad, and has taken custody of at least a dozen others captured outside the country.

## **Cyanide Letter Sent To US Embassy Wellington**

NEW ZEALAND: Local media reported that a letter laced with cyanide was sent to US Embassy Wellington, prompting security fears for Tiger Woods at this week's New Zealand Golf Open. The Sunday Star-Times newspaper said the letter, sent this week, contained industrial strength cyanide and also carried a threat to disrupt the visit of the world's number one player. The newspaper said the letter to the embassy was sent from within New Zealand.

The 26-year-old Woods is scheduled to arrive in New Zealand on Tuesday for Thursday's tournament start. Police assistant commissioner Jon White on Saturday said a letter was at the centre of sharply heightened security surrounding Woods' visit. He also warned people to be particularly careful around food and catering at the New Zealand Golf Open at Paraparaumu Beach. White urged people to be vigilant even when travelling to the course for the event, and to report anything suspicious. A large police presence has been ordered to protect the tournament, rather than private security guards. In New Zealand cyanide, which comes in either a paste or powder, can only be bought with a government permit. It is mostly used to kill small pests and in gold extraction.

## **Situation Described As 'Grave';**

### **Both India And Pakistan On 'Hair-Trigger Alert'**

NEW DELHI, India - Indian Defence Minister George Fernandes described on Thursday the situation on the India-Pakistan border as 'grave,' and said the deployment of troops along the border will be completed in two to three days. Fernandes said that despite the troop deployment, India will wait for any 'positive result' in placing diplomatic pressure on Islamabad to rein in Pakistan-based Islamic rebel groups. India's Cabinet Committee on Security was meeting Thursday to outline the next course of action against Pakistan. Meanwhile, news reports say that Islamabad has put all its airports on high alert and installed anti-aircraft guns. In case of war, the Pakistan Air Force will take charge of all civilian airports. Pakistan's Navy has also started aerial monitoring of coastal areas.

Pakistan on Thursday banned two Islamic rebel groups named by India for a terrorist attack on the Indian parliament on 13 December. India blames Lashkar-e-Taiba (LET) and Jaish-e-Mohammed (JEM) for the raid that left 14 people dead, including all five attackers. Islamabad's move followed a decision by the U.S. State Department Wednesday to add both the LET and JEM to its official terrorists list. It is not clear if Pakistan's latest action can reduce the tension with India as the two nuclear rival neighbours appear to be on the brink of a military conflict. Troops on both sides of the border are on high alert and missiles are in position. Intermittent firing from both sides has been going on for several days in Kashmir.

#### *Notes:*

Lashkar-e-Taiba (LET) and Jaish-e-Mohammed (JEM)

## **Government 'Discussing War' In Response To Attack On Indian Parliament**

India's prime minister said on Wednesday that the government is 'discussing war,' as well as diplomacy, as a response to last week's suicide attack on Parliament, that it blames on Pakistan-based militants. Atal Bihari Vajpayee told India's Parliament that Pakistani officials know there are forces within Pakistan that are taking part in terrorism in India. He repeated India's demand that it crack down on them. India says all five attackers were Pakistanis and that the neighbouring country's intelligence service sponsored the attack. Pakistan has denied the charge. ERRI analysts said today that they are increasingly concerned that Al-Qaeda and Taliban combatants, having fled Afghanistan, may choose the Kashmir region as their next destination.

## **India Warns Its Patience Is Running Out**

NEW DELHI, INDIA - Police in India have brought charges against a suspected Kashmiri militant who is accused of masterminding last week's suicide attack on the Indian parliament in the capital New Delhi which left 13 people dead. Mohammad Afzal, who was arrested in the Kashmir city of Srinagar, is said to be a member of the Jaish-e-Mohammad (JEM) separatist group and could face the death penalty if, as expected, he is further charged under new anti-terrorist legislation.

New Delhi Police Commissioner Ajay Raj Sharma, who announced the charges, also accused Pakistan's main intelligence service (ISI) of involvement in the attack and suggested Pakistan's military government must have been aware of its planning. Pakistan has denied involvement and warned India against overreacting.

The police commissioner said that Afzal, who along with his wife was charged on 15 counts including conspiracy, was trained by the ISI. Sharma also said that the five attackers were Pakistani citizens. They all were killed in the raid. The attack on parliament was allegedly a combined operation carried out by two Pakistan-based Kashmiri militant groups, Jaish-e-Mohammad and Lashkar-e-Taiba (LT). According to the police commissioner: 'It now seems the ISI ordered the Jaish and Lashkar-e-Taiba to launch a combined attack.' Police say two of four people detained in connection with the attack were trained by the ISI in Pakistani-administered Kashmir. Sharma said that those questioned by police had not actually confessed that the Pakistani government knew about the plot, which officials believe was planned some three or four months ago.

On Monday, it was being reported that the suspected ringleader of the attack has told police that one of the five Pakistani terrorists killed during the suicide attack was also involved in the hijacking of an Indian Airlines plane two years ago. The man - known as Mohammed or Sunny Ahmed Qazi - is believed to have stabbed to death a honeymooner on the ill-fated Indian Airlines plane bound for Kandahar in December 1999.

New Delhi is increasing pressure on Islamabad to act against Kashmiri separatists which operate in Indian-administered Kashmir. The Indian government itself is under pressure from internal groups and the media which accuse it of taking a soft

approach toward Pakistan. On Saturday, Prime Minister Atal Behari Vajpayee warned that India had now reached the limits of its tolerance. He said: 'We cannot tolerate such attacks any more.' Home Minister LK Advani said India would wait 'for a few days' for Pakistan to take action against the militants. But Pakistan has responded to the escalating Indian rhetoric with a warning that it is ready to retaliate if India takes action against them.

*Notes:*

Jaish-e-Mohammad (JEM), Lashkar-e-Taiba (LT) and Hizb-ul-Mujahideen (HM)

### **Terrorist Attack On Indian Parliament**

A suicide squad of terrorists attacked the Parliament building in New Delhi, India, on Thursday, leaving at least 13 people dead. A suicide bomber, who detonated explosives strapped to his waist, and four gunmen lost their lives in the attack and a resulting shootout with security forces. India is racked by separatist and communal violence, but this is the first time such an attack has been launched on the heavily guarded parliamentary complex. There was no immediate claim of responsibility, though initial speculation turned to Islamic militants fighting against Indian rule in the state of Jammu and Kashmir, where 38 people were killed in a suicide attack on the state assembly two months ago. Asked who might be behind the attack, Home Minister Lal Advani said: 'It may be one of the organizations which have been active in the country. Ever since this practice of suicide terrorism has been developed, anything can be attacked.'

Witnesses said six people, one the suicide bomber, stormed the complex, killing at least seven people. Witnesses said five attackers stormed through the complex firing automatic weapons and throwing grenades at about 1145 hours local time, soon after both houses of Parliament adjourned. Gunshots were heard for about an hour. Doctors at a nearby hospital said at least five security guards and a worker were killed. Star News said the heavily armed attackers drove onto the parliamentary grounds in a vehicle with a fake pass. One deputy said she had been told by police that the vehicle, laden with unexploded explosives, was still inside the complex.

Hundreds of troops in full battle gear took up positions around the parliament, sealing off the area as security forces throughout Delhi and around the nation were put on red alert. Analysts said if Thursday's raid was by Kashmir separatists, India could launch a counter-attack across the Line of Control into Pakistani-held territory, raising the risk of a dangerous confrontation between the nuclear-capable neighbours. New Delhi has long accused Pakistan of arming and funding Islamic militants fighting against Indian rule in Kashmir. Islamabad denies the charge.

### **Twelve Dead, More Than 20 Wounded In Assault On Indian Parliament**

New Delhi, India - In what Indian Prime Minister Atal Behari Vajpayee called 'a warning to the entire nation,' five armed men attacked the Indian Parliament build-

ing at about 11:30 local time on Thursday. Indian government officials told the BBC that all five gunmen had been killed, along with six police officers and a gardener. A specific motive for the attack remains unclear at the time of this report and no group has admitted carrying out the attack. But, Indian authorities hypothesize that the attack was undertaken by Kashmiri militants, some of whom may have ties to Osama Bin Laden and Al-Qaeda, other counter-terrorism analysts said. At least one analyst today said that the attack may be an attempt to further escalate tensions between Pakistan and India. The entire matter remains under official investigation and allegation of 'lax security' are already being made by some legislators.

### **Terrorist Attack On Indian Parliament Being Reported**

NEW DELHI, India - Early and as yet unconfirmed reports are coming in to Emergency Net News in regard to an armed attack on the Indian Parliament building. Circumstances there are described by eye-witnesses as 'chaotic and fluid.' Unconfirmed reports say that five armed men tried to storm the Parliament facilities and that numerous shots were fired and explosions heard in the vicinity. The number of injuries or deaths is not known at the time of this report.

*Source:*

Emergency Net News

### **Al-Qaeda Reportedly Planned More Aviation-Related Attacks In Britain, Australia And India**

Authorities in India said a man detained on suspicion of being linked to the criminal Osama Bin Laden's al-Qaeda terror network has confessed to planning suicide attacks in Britain, Australia and India. Indian Home Minister LK Advani said: "We arrested this person about a month ago in Bombay and he made some very shocking confessions." He said the man had trained as a pilot in both Britain and Australia, and that his confession revealed a global conspiracy by al-Qaeda to carry out further acts similar to the 11 September attacks on New York and Washington.

According to a report in the British Daily Telegraph newspaper, the man confessed to being part of an al-Qaeda cell which had checked in at a London airport on 11 September for two flights bound for Manchester. They had planned to hijack the planes and crash them into the Houses of Parliament and London's Tower Bridge, but when news of the attacks in the United States came through they panicked and fled.

Meanwhile, the Australian government has confirmed that a man arrested in India a month ago with suspected bin Laden links had indeed learned how to fly in Australia. It is not yet clear if he is the same man. The authorities in India have not named the suspect, but according to Indian news reports he is Mohammed Afroz, a resident of Bombay, who is said to have spent considerable sums of money training as pilot abroad. The man confessed that al-Qaeda was planning to use India as a base from which to launch attacks on Britain, Australia and the Indian parliament.

ERRI analyst Jeremy Zakis, reporting from Australia, says that the Australian Security Intelligence Organisation (ASIO) confirmed on Thursday that it was investigating links between a man arrested in Bombay last month on suspicion of being a terrorist, and claims that he received pilot training in Australia. According to Australian Foreign Minister Alexander Downer, the arrested man confessed to planning suicide attacks for Australian and British targets, but did not say how far his planning had progressed.

Downer told ABC radio, 'He has done pilot training apparently in Australia and in Britain so presumably the type of suicide attack he was contemplating was using aircraft...whether of course, he would have ever gone ahead with it, one doesn't know...'

Australian intelligence officials announced there were no specific threats against Australia at this time and authorities would work to determine if the arrested man's claims were true. Since the September 11 attacks, Australia has remained on a higher-than-normal state of alert after being considered a target for terrorism when it invoked allegiance to the US through the ANZUS treaty. General security precautions include full ID check's at military bases, tighter security patrols at airports and the tougher screening of illegal immigrants.

### **ERRI Issues Terrorism Advisory For New Delhi And Surrounding Region**

NEW DELHI, The Emergency Response & Research Institute (ERRI - parent of this website) today issued a terrorism advisory concerning the possibility of impending terrorist attacks in India during the next 72 hours. The primary threat is believed associated with the Indian Independence Day that occurs on 15 August. This advisory is issued based on unspecified threats and OSINT reports concerning potential attacks by Kashmiri extremist groups, to include but not limited to; the Hizbul Mujahideen, Lashker-e Toiba, Al-Badr or others. The threatened actions also include a possible assassination attempt on Prime Minister Atal Behari Vajpayee, according to local police sources.

Indian security services are already said to be on 'high alert' in regard to this possible threat and have undertaken extensive security measures in New Delhi and surrounding states. U.S. citizens living in or visiting New Delhi should maintain a high state of awareness and caution during this period, and avoid large crowds. Visitors are also advised to report suspicious packages to appropriate authorities, and vary their normal travel routes. ERRI counter-terrorist analysts know of no specific threat to U.S. citizens at the time of this report, but a 'terrorist alert' may be issued, should additional information become available...

### **Thai Prime Minister In Assassination Attempt**

A senior security adviser to Thai Prime Minister Thaksin Shinawatra said he believed 'some sort of incendiary device' was responsible for an explosion and fire that destroyed a Boeing 737-400 jet being prepared for the Prime Minister at Bangkok air-

port on Saturday. The explosion killed one crewmember and wounded four others.

Police General Prasarn Wongwai said in a statement: 'Looking at the wreckage, the source of explosion came from where the Prime Minister was supposed to be seated... I believe the bomb should be the white phosphorus type.' Wongwai told reporters that Thaksin had a 'clue' who might have been involved, but he declined to elaborate further fearing he may put extra pressure on investigators.

Thaksin was due to fly on the chartered Thai Airways plane from Bangkok to the northern city of Chiang Mai with 148 other passengers. Officials said the explosion occurred 35 minutes before the aircraft was due to leave, while Thaksin was in transit to the airport. Part of his security team was already at the terminal and witnessed the blast. An unidentified airline source told a Thai newspaper that the blast had occurred under seats 11A and 11B, where Thaksin and his son, Phanthongthae, were supposed to sit.

The fire destroyed the aircraft and forced an evacuation of nearby terminal buildings. Fire crews told reporters that damage to the plane indicated the fire had been caused by something other than aviation fuel. Thailand's 'The Nation' newspaper quoted a police source as saying the bomb was possibly linked to Thaksin's pledge to crack down on drug smuggling, largely blamed on drug lords in neighbouring Myanmar (Burma). Last month, after his Thai Rak Thai (Thai Love Thai) party won the general elections, Thaksin told reporters that his government's top priority would be to curb the 'rampant' drug trade.

Thaksin later told a local radio station that he believed the explosion was the work of 'insiders' who knew his flight schedule. The Prime Minister later flew to Chiang Mai by military transport plane. Thailand is currently involved in a border conflict with the Burmese Army and occasional insurgency involving Burmese ethnic groups across the border. The U.S. Department of State issued a Public Announcement on February 15 of this year advising U.S. citizens to exercise caution while travelling near the border regions. Terrorism in Thailand consists mainly of low-level bombings and kidnapping's.

### **Islamic Movement Said To Threaten Central Asian Stability**

**KAZAKHSTAN:** Kazak authorities are said to be concerned that the south of the country is on the brink of being dragged into a conflict with Islamic militants. Kazak neighbours Kyrgyzstan and Uzbekistan have been victim to armed incursions by members of the Islamic Movement of Uzbekistan (IMU) for two consecutive years. The increasing extremist activity has alarmed the Kazak Security Council. Council secretary Marat Tajin said: 'There is every reason to expect a worsening of the situation on the southern border of the region in the spring and summer of next year (2001)...'

### **Russia To Reportedly Deploy 50,000 Troops To Tajik-Afghan Border**

**RUSSIA/TAJIKISTAN:** A source in the Russian Defense Ministry said that 50,000 troops will be sent to Tajikistan in the spring of 2001, after which the Russian air force will conduct preventive bombing strikes against Taliban camps near the Afghan-Tajik border. The plan of this operation has been developed by a special team under the leadership of Russian Security Council Secretary Sergey Ivanov and, on the whole, has been reportedly approved by President Vladimir Putin.

According to the source's information, Ivanov's team explains the need for this operation by the fact that the anti-Taliban coalition forces have now been practically defeated. The Taliban regime recently announced its withdrawal from peace negotiations with the armed opposition. In the Russian Security Council Secretary's opinion, all of this threatens political stability in the Central Asian republics, first and foremost - in Tajikistan and Uzbekistan...

### **Threat Of Chemical Terrorist Attack Reported; ERRI Also Receives Threat Message**

**GUAM:** It was reported on Thursday that the Airport Authority and the governor's office of the U.S. territory of Guam have received an e-mail warning that there will be a terrorist chemical attack on Guam on 24 December, involving the use of nerve gas and targeting hotels, restaurants and public places. The e-mail came from an unidentified group claiming to represent master terrorist Osama bin Laden. The e-mail message also said that the attack was meant to 'teach a lesson to the U.S. government ... not to harm the Afghan people and its allies' and added that there will be another nerve gas attack on 1 January 2001 if the first warning is ignored.

The webmaster of the ERRI (this) website also received a e-mail threat, relating to Osama Bin Laden, on 20 Dec 2000. The threat directed at ERRI said, 'Stop messing with Osama bin laden or I will do something serious to you that you will never forget.' ERRI turned the threat letter over to the appropriate authorities for further analysis. The veracity of both threats could not be verified at the time of this report, but Emergency Response & Research Institute (ERRI) analysts are urging additional caution and awareness for Americans during the coming holiday season. Particularly those travelling overseas are warned to avoid crowds, vary their routes of travel, check vehicles before starting them, and remain constantly aware of their surroundings. Please report suspicious persons or events to the proper authorities....

### **Australia Deports Six Immigrants With 'Terrorist Links'**

**AUSTRALIA:** According to local media reports on Monday, six people with links to terrorism were deported from Australia during the past 12 months. Citing senior counter-terrorism officials, two deportees were linked to middle eastern terrorist groups, two were linked to the Algerian Armed Islamic Group (GIA) and one to the Liberation Tigers of Tamil Eelam (LTTE) in Sri Lanka. A sixth individual was deported after Australian authorities discovered he was under surveillance by an



unnamed foreign security service for links to terrorism.

An official, who wasn't named, said that the inclusion of terrorists amongst regular migrants reflected 'the changing immigration patterns.'

'I couldn't say... that any of them were demonstrably here to carry out terrorism. But the fact they've got links to (terrorism) means this country doesn't want them,' the official said. Olympic security Commander Paul McKinnon wasn't briefed on the deportations, an indication according to some officials, that those deported were of no significant threat to the Sydney 2000 Olympic Games...

### **Dos Says South Asia Breeding Ground For Terrorists**

**UNITED STATES:** According to a U.S. State Department assessment, dozens of terrorist organizations and narcotics smugglers are moving into South Asia, where political instability allows them to flourish. Government experts say that the development has fundamentally altered the terrorist threat posed to the United States and its allies. Islamic extremists fighting in Chechnya, Lebanon, Kosovo, Algeria and Kashmir, together with international terrorist groups, are using Afghanistan as a training ground and headquarters. Terrorist groups, including those with ties to Osama Bin Laden, allegedly operate with the implicit support of government officials in both Afghanistan and Pakistan. Ambassador Michael Sheehan, coordinator for counter-terrorism at the DoS, said: 'Afghanistan has become the primary swamp for terrorism, harbouring terrorists from the region and around the world. This shift is one of the most important recent trends we have identified in terrorism...'

*Source:*

<http://www.emergency.com/ennday.htm>

### **Security Agencies Assess Possibility Of Terrorist Attack During Olympics As 'Low'**

**AUSTRALIA:** It was reported on Thursday that Australian intelligence and security agencies have identified groups linked to international terrorist Osama Bin Laden as posing the biggest potential threat during the Olympics. The sources however stressed that the security agencies had assessed a 'low' risk of an attack by bin Laden-funded terrorists.

Australian Intelligence and security officers, with cooperation from international agencies, have reportedly traced bin Laden's links to Australia and across Southeast Asia in efforts to assess, and minimize, the risk to the upcoming Olympic Games in Sydney. Sources told The Age newspaper that Australian security agencies have established that bin Laden has contacts throughout Australia, the Philippines and Thailand.

A security source said: 'Assessments have been made that a terrorist attack in Sydney is highly unlikely - it is a very low probability. But if one does occur, the evidence suggests it is most likely to result from Islamic militant activity connected to him (bin Laden) and the effects of that would be devastating.' ERRI analysts said

that events in Munich, Germany in 1972 and again in Atlanta in 1996, show that the Olympics are always a high-profile terrorist target.

### **Terrorism Middle-East - Chronological Order**

**JORDAN:** A senior US embassy official was shot to death outside his home in the Jordanian capital, Amman. He has been named as Lawrence Foley, an employee of USAid, the American development agency. He lived in western Amman's middle-class residential area. Analysts say the killing comes at a time of rising anti-American sentiment in Jordan and the rest of the Arab world. Police said Foley was hit by several bullets shot by at least one attacker. His wife found his body in the yard outside their home and called police. Jordanian Information minister Mohammad Adwan said it was too early to speculate whether it was a terrorist assassination, or just a criminal act. But he said the killing 'regardless of its motives, is an attack against Jordan and its national security.' Nobody has so far claimed responsibility for the attack. ERRI analysts said that they are exploring a pattern and possibility of links between this latest attack on Westerners and a larger series of plots that have occurred in Yemen, Kuwait, Indonesia, and elsewhere in the past few weeks.

**AMMAN, JORDAN:** According to very preliminary and largely fragmentary reports, a U.S. diplomat was killed outside his home in Amman. It is thought that the official was shot several times by an unknown assailant, as he was leaving his home. The perpetrator then fled. The incident reportedly occurred at about 07:30, local time.

*Source:*

Emergency Net News

### **French And Yemeni Investigators Try To Determine Cause Of Explosion And Fire**

**YEMEN:** French experts are being sent to investigate what caused a French-owned oil tanker to burst into flames off the coast of Yemen after the owners alleged their vessel was targeted by terrorists. Yemeni authorities are trying to salvage the Limburg tanker, which is still burning in the Gulf of Aden. They have sought to play down allegations that the explosion was the result of an attack, saying a fire on board was the most likely cause.

The owners of the tanker, Euronav, say they believe their vessel was deliberately rammed by a smaller boat. All but one of the eight French and 17 Bulgarian crew members have been accounted for and many of them have been taken to a hospital. The Limburg's captain reported an explosion which was followed by a fire on Sunday morning as the ship came into the port of Aden from Iran.

The incident occurred just a week before the second anniversary of a terrorist attack blamed on al-Qaeda against the USS Cole near the same Yemeni port killed 17 US servicemen. Captain Peter Raes, managing director of Euronav, said it would be 'near impossible' for an accidental explosion to have taken place. He said the

Limburg was a new, double-hulled ship, and was barely moving at the time of the explosion, which happened during good weather.

### **French Oil Tanker Exploded And Ablaze Outside Yemeni Port**

**YEMEN:** After an explosion on board, a French-owned oil tanker is on fire off the coast of Yemen. Yemeni officials say they do not consider the blast an act of sabotage, but a diplomat at the French embassy said early reports, though contradictory, suggested a terrorist attack. The French Vice-Consul reportedly said: 'It seems the oil tanker was rammed by a small boat stuffed with explosives.' The tanker burst into flame as it headed from Iran towards the port of Mina al-Dabah, about 355 miles east of Aden. Several crew members are reported to have jumped into the sea. Twelve have been taken to a hospital, but a number may remain unaccounted for.

The French diplomat said: 'It seems to be an attack in the same style as the USS Cole.' But, Yemeni officials are adamant the incident is nothing like that attack, blamed on al-Qaeda, two years ago in the port of Aden. The tanker, which has been identified as the Limburg, was coming into the port to load up with crude oil when the blaze started. Western intelligence officials said they are monitoring events in Yemen and had no immediate comment on the incident until further facts were available.

#### *Historical Reference:*

Yemen's denial of the possibility of a terrorist explosion on the French tanker sounds eerily familiar. On 13 Oct 2000 at about 11:00CDT, Emergency Net News issued the following news story:

### **Yemeni Admiral Denies That Cole Explosion Was A Terrorist Attack**

'The United Press International is reporting today that a senior Yemeni official on Saturday rejected United States statements that the explosion on a U.S. Navy destroyer which killed 17 servicemen was an apparent act of terrorism. The commander of the Yemeni naval base of Aden, Gen. Mohammad Ali Ibrahim, reportedly told UPI that initial investigations into Thursday's explosion that ripped through the side of the USS Cole off the coast of Aden showed it was not caused 'intentionally by external forces.' He said the explosion 'was most likely caused by a technical malfunction in the U.S. destroyer itself...the large hole the explosion left in the vessel shows it is far-fetched that it was caused by explosive devices, no matter how big.' U.S. officials say they are convinced that the explosion was caused by Islamic suicide bombers and that an inspection of the damaged ship reveals an explosion, external to the ship.'

### **Public Announcement**

This Public Announcement is being updated to alert Americans to the potential for further terrorist actions against U.S. citizens abroad and that individuals may be planning terrorist actions against U.S. citizens and interests in the region of the Persian

Gulf and the Arabian Peninsula. This Public Announcement supersedes the Public Announcement of April 10, 2002. This Public Announcement expires on October 24, 2002.

The U.S. Government continues to receive information about potential terrorist actions against U.S. interests abroad. There is growing concern that individuals may be planning terrorist actions against United States citizens and interests in the region of the Persian Gulf and the Arabian Peninsula. U.S. citizens should exercise caution in those areas at this time. As indicated in the Worldwide Caution Public Announcement of March 17, 2002, increased security at official U.S. facilities may lead terrorists and their sympathizers to seek softer targets.

The Department of State is concerned about the potential for further violent responses in the region and elsewhere due to the ongoing crisis in Israel, the West Bank and Gaza. These have included demonstrations with anti-American sentiment. The Department of State reminds Americans to remain vigilant with regard to their personal security and to exercise caution. As further stated in the Department's Worldwide Caution Public Announcement of March 17, 2002, U.S. citizens and interests abroad remain at increased risk of terrorist attacks, including by groups with links to Osama Bin Ladin's Al-Qaeda organization. These individuals do not distinguish between official and civilian targets. The Department of State has unconfirmed reports that American citizens may be targeted for kidnapping or other terrorist actions. In late January 2002, an American journalist was taken hostage and murdered in Pakistan.

U.S. Government facilities worldwide remain at a heightened state of alert. Facilities have closed and will continue to temporarily close or suspend public services as necessary to review their security posture and ensure its adequacy. On occasion, the travel of official personnel at embassies and consulates around the world may be restricted and these posts may recommend that private American citizens avoid the same areas if at all possible. Services to American citizens could be impaired if employees' movements are restricted. In those instances, U.S. embassies and consulates will make every effort to provide emergency services to American citizens. American citizens in need of emergency assistance should telephone the nearest U.S. Embassy or Consulate before visiting there.

### **Plot To Attack US Embassy Sana'a Said Foiled**

**YEMEN:** A Yemeni Foreign Ministry official said on Wednesday that the evil Osama Bin Laden's al-Qaeda terror network planned an attack on U.S. Embassy Sana'a. As was previously reported, the U.S. Embassy suspended most consular services on Monday, citing what it said were credible security threats. The suspension remains in effect. The Yemeni official, speaking on condition of anonymity, said the government had received information from the United States that al-Qaeda terrorists had plotted to carry out an attack on the embassy. The official did not say when the attack was to have taken place.

The Foreign Ministry official said the information received from the United States came from interrogations of a senior al-Qaeda figure, Ibn Al-Shaykh al-Libi, who is in U.S. custody. Al-Libi is a Libyan who ran some of bin Laden's training camps. He was captured by Pakistan and turned over to U.S. authorities this month. The Aden-based newspaper Al-Ayyam reported that one of the Yemeni al-Qaeda militants detained by U.S. forces in Afghanistan and transferred to Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, told U.S. interrogators of a plot to blow up the U.S. Embassy in San'a. The privately owned newspaper said the plan called for detonating a truck loaded with a ton of explosives. The newspaper said the information was relayed to Yemeni authorities, who 'took stringent security measures to thwart the plot.'

In response to the security alert, the main road in front of the embassy in the Yemeni capital was closed to vehicles and pedestrians, and there were increased police patrols around the compound. Police also stepped up security around U.S. companies and diplomatic residences in the country.

**YEMEN (Terror Group Reference: al-Qaeda):** Government forces reportedly attacked a village in eastern Yemen where suspected members of the evil Osama bin Laden's al-Qaeda terror network may be hiding. One report said 12 people were killed when officers from the police and armed forces clashed with tribesmen in the village of al-Hosn in Marib province, some 125 miles east of the capital Sanaa. Residents of the village are believed to have refused to hand over a number of suspected al-Qaeda members when asked by the authorities to do so. Tanks and helicopters were deployed in the attack, which involved heavy exchanges of gunfire.

### **Indictment Says Iranian Government Agents Allegedly**

'Encouraged and Directed' Saudi Hezbollah Attack on Khobar Towers

WASHINGTON DC - Within the past few minutes, Attorney General John Ashcroft announced the indictment of fourteen individuals, including thirteen people described by Ashcroft as 'members of Saudi Hezbollah' and one member of 'Lebanese Hezbollah.' AG Ashcroft also said that the indictments charged that the bombers were 'encouraged and directed' by unidentified members of the Iranian government. Ashcroft emphasized the fact that the indictments were based in facts that could be presented in U.S. court and that an investigation of other individuals who may have been involved in the Khobar bombing continues...

### **Khobar Tower Indictments Handed Down In Virginia**

WASHINGTON DC - A news conference is scheduled for 13:30EDT at FBI headquarters in Washington, DC. U.S. Attorney General John Ashcroft and FBI Director Louis Freeh are expected to release details about the indictment in Virginia of fourteen (14) individuals for their involvement in a June 25, 1996 bombing of the Khobar Towers USAF housing complex in Saudi Arabia.

Source:

Emergency Net News

World Famous Personalities In History

## **Iranian Officials Involved In Khobar Tower Bombing??**

WASHINGTON, DC: According to an article in the New Yorker on Sunday, FBI Director Louis Freeh has given the White House a list of people - said to possibly include Iranian officials - who he believes should be indicted in the 1996 bombing in Saudi Arabia that killed 19 U.S. service personnel. The June 1996 bomb at the Khobar Towers military complex in Daharan, Saudi Arabia, killed 19 servicemen and injured 500 others. No official FBI confirmation of the New Yorker report was forthcoming. On 26 Feb 2001, Emergency Net News issued a report citing allegations that a man, identified as 'Ahmad Sherifi, a senior member of the Iranian Revolutionary Guard,' was implicated in the Khobar Towers bombing.

## **Franks Lists Threats Facing Central Command**

WASHINGTON, April 13, 2001 - While the Persian Gulf is the crucial area for U.S. Central Command, the command has much more on its plate, said Army Gen. Tommy R. Franks. Franks, testifying before the House Armed Services Committee, said the command stands ready to protect American vital interests throughout the Central Command area of responsibility. 'The volatility of our region requires that USCENTCOM remain adaptable and agile,' Franks said. 'Without a large footprint in the region, we must be truly 'deployable.' Responsive command, control, and communications during peace, crisis, and conflict will remain key to our ability to accomplish the mission.

The key to the Central Command area is to maintain uninterrupted access to energy resources. The Persian Gulf region contains roughly 68 percent of the world's known oil and natural gas reserves - 'more than 40 percent of which pass through the Strait of Hormuz,' Franks said. 'And so, one of our responsibilities - in fact, one of our objectives - is to maintain access to these energy resources at the same time that we maintain access to markets in the region,' he remarked.

Iraq, of course, is the main disturber of the peace in the region. CENTCOM maintains the no-fly zone over the southern third of that country. In addition, the command conducts maritime intercept operations in the northern Arabian Gulf. These operations seek to stop Saddam Hussein from smuggling oil and using the revenue gained to reconstitute his weapons of mass destruction or to improve his conventional capabilities.

But there is more to CENTCOM than containing Hussein, Franks continued. The command's area of responsibility encompasses 25 nations in an area about twice the size of the continental United States. 'It includes the northern Red Sea area, the countries of Egypt and Jordan. It includes the Horn of Africa and East Africa; the Arabian Peninsula, certainly; and South Asia from Pakistan up into Central Asia as far as Kazakhstan,' Franks said.

Iran is another concern, he said. Franks called Iran an 'enigma' during his testimony. He said Iranian President Mohammed Khatami has indicated a willingness to improve ties with the West and loosen the fundamentalist restrictions on the

Iranian people, but his hands are tied. '(Supreme Leader Ayatollah Ali Hoseini-) Khamenei and the ruling conservatives have clearly demonstrated that they will not accept change, nor will they share the principal elements of state power with an increasingly restless population,' Franks said. In spite of the internal discord, Iran continues to improve its conventional and unconventional military capabilities, he said.

'Tehran's ability to interdict the Strait of Hormuz with air, surface and sub-surface naval units, as well as mines and missiles remains a concern,' Franks told the lawmakers. 'Additionally, Iran's asymmetrical capabilities are becoming more robust.' He said these capabilities include high-speed attack patrol ships, anti-ship missiles, unmanned aerial vehicles, and hardened facilities for surface-to-surface missiles and command and control. But the main concerns, he noted, are Iran's weapons of mass destruction program and large medium-range ballistic missile program.

'Although President Khatami is attempting to change Iran's image, sustained hostility of conservative hard-liners is evident as we see continued support of terrorism aimed at derailing efforts for peace between Israel and the Palestinians,' he said.

The ongoing Israeli-Palestinian violence is of continuing concern in the region, Franks said. In the Persian Gulf, violence has increased internal pressures on moderate Arab governments that must balance responses to public opinion with the value placed on their relationships with the West, he said. 'If the (Arabian) Peninsula states begin to distance themselves from the United States, their inability to face the dual threats of Iran and Iraq will leave them vulnerable to intimidation by these aggressive powers,' Franks said.

The October attack on the destroyer USS Cole highlights the threat of terrorism in the region. Franks said the threat remains high and is becoming more sophisticated. 'Despite our counter-terrorism successes over the past year, including the disruption of terrorist cells in Jordan and Kuwait, extremist groups continue to recruit, train and conduct operations,' he said.

One trend is unprecedented cooperation between known and obscure groups. 'This cooperation includes moving people and materials, providing safe havens and money and training new recruits,' he said. 'The trend is especially disturbing as known organizations gain plausible deniability for operations, while the obscure groups achieve an increased capability from training and financial support.'

He said terrorist organizations continue to seek larger explosive devices, more lethal tactics and chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear weapons. He said this trend points to a more significant problem in the future. 'In addition to the use of unconventional weapons, the potential for terrorists to regard unconventional targets (civilians and civilian infrastructure) as practical options for attack seems likely,' Franks said.

'As terrorist networks improve their ability to operate within the global communications environment, we see increased capability to support recruitment, conduct fund-raising, and direct sub-elements worldwide. The complex terrorist threat

we face today is less predictable and potentially much more dangerous than we have seen in the past.'

*Source:*

Jim Garamone, American Forces Press Service

### **Tehran Times on Khobar Bombing; Who's Engaging In Disinformation?**

The Tehran Times newspaper yesterday called the CBS News article cited below a 'disinformation campaign.' In an article written by 'Our Staff Writer,' the Tehran Times reportedly said, 'The U.S. has launched a disinformation campaign against Iran since the victory of the Islamic Revolution in 1979, hurling baseless accusations against it...More recently CBS, in coordination with the Zionist lobby, has been trying to implicate Iran in the Khobar bombing in Saudi Arabia since the mid-1990s.' Further, the Tehran Times charged, 'Therefore, the new accusation is an attempt by the United States to shift attention from Israel to Iran in order to give a blank check to Israel to massacre the Palestinians.'

U.S. authorities had no immediate comment on the Iranian newspaper allegations. One counter-terrorism analyst in Washington, however, told Emergency Net News that regardless of what the Tehran Times said on behalf of the Iranian government, it will be 'the evidence that determines who is really engaging in disinformation.'

### **Iranian Tie In Khobar Towers Attack?**

According to CBS News on Friday evening, sources say that US federal investigators believe they now know who planned and carried out the Khobar Towers attack in 1996, and are close to preparing a formal indictment naming some two dozen suspects - including at least one senior official in Iran. Nineteen US Air Force personnel were killed when a truck loaded with explosives pulled up outside their barracks in Dahrhan, Saudi Arabia, on 25 June 1996. Nearly 100 FBI agents spent up to a year on the case, but were eventually recalled when US officials complained of 'a lack of cooperation from Saudi Arabia.' FBI Director Louis Freeh later said that the cooperation issues had been resolved.

On 26 June 1996, one day after the attack, an ERRI report on the Dharan bombing said the following: 'ERRI analysts say that several other small splinter groups of 'Saudi nationalists,' 'Moslem extremists,' or a specially put together team of Iranian-backed 'sappers' could also be responsible for the disaster in Dhahrhan.'